

# Editor™ Manual

GlobeCaster 8000

### GlobeCaster **4000**



<u>Copyrights</u>. Copyright 1998-2004, GlobalStreams, Inc. All rights reserved. The GlobeCaster System software, content and documentation are copyright 1998-2004. This User Manual may not, in whole or in any part, be copied, photocopied, reproduced, translated, or reduced to any electronic medium or machine readable format without the prior written consent of an authorized representative from GlobalStreams, Inc.

Certain image and clip art files are Copyright © 1998, Image Ideas Inc., Richmond Hill, ON, Canada. Certain images are Copyright © 1998 Izzy Schwartz Photography, Sacramento, CA. Certain font files are Copyright © 1996, Bitstream, Inc., Cambridge, MA and copyright © 1996-1999, Media Workshop, Inc., Beaverton, OR. Certain 3D objects are Copyright © 1999 Zygote Media Group, Provo, UT. All rights reserved to their respective holders.

Trademarks. GlobalStreams, GlobalStreams and the GlobalStreams logos, GlobeCaster and the GlobeCaster logos, Warp Engine, GlobeCaster Editor, GlobeCaster Animator/Compositor, Time Machine, GlobeCaster Effects Generator, GlobeCaster Character Generator, GlobeCaster Switcher, GlobeCaster Virtual Sets, ClipMem, and 3D Video Tracing are trademarks of GlobalStreams, Inc. Trinity is a registered trademark of GlobalStreams, Inc. Windows and Windows NT are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Bitstream is the registered trademark of Bitstream, Inc. Artbeats, InnoVision, Izzy and other trademarks used in the GlobeCaster materials are the property of their respective holders.

<u>Patents</u>. Various technology in the GlobeCaster System is patented in the United States, including without limitation patent numbers 5,941,997, 5,978,876, 5,872,565. Other patents, in the United States and othercountries, are pending.

<u>Acknowledgments</u>. The Software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group. Artbeats Software, Inc. provided visual imagery for the Fire, Arc, Bloom, Cityscape, Waterfall, Smoke, Tvwater, and FireStage effects.



### **Table of Contents**

Chapter 1	: Document Overview	3
	Introduction	4
	Conventions	5
Chapter 2	: Quick Start	9
	Adding Events	.10
	Changing The Duration Of Events	.14
	Creating Cuts	.16
	Creating Dissolves	.18
	Adding A Graphic Overlay	21
	Live Input Events	26
		<b>.</b> .
Chapter 3	: Reference	.31
	Introduction To The Interface	.32
	Using Monitor And Transport Controls	43
	Working With Clips	.70
	Working With Timelines	.81
	Effect Properties Panel as Chroma Keyer	23
	Using Advanced Editing Modes	24
	Digitizing With Time Machine	38
	Exporting Time Machine Clips with Audio Compression 1	53
	Animating Audio On The Timeline	55
	Mixing Audio	61
	Using Options And Applications Buttons	70
Chapter 4	: Tutorials1	81
	Linear Editing	82
	Non-Linear Editing With Time Machine	212
	Using Advanced Editing Modes	250 270
		./5
Appendix	I: Keyboard Commands	303
Appendix	II: Troubleshooting Guide	309
FCC Notic	e3	313
Index		317
		-
GlobeCas	ter System License Agreement	331
Applicatio	n Notes	337

Table of Contents



### GLOBECASTER EDITOR MANUAL DOCUMENT OVERVIEW



2 ))))

Editor Manual



#### Chapter 1 Document Overview

This chapter provides information on how this manual is organized. It also introduces conventions used within the manual, and provides information on how to get in touch with GlobeCaster Tech Support and GlobalStreams.

The following topics are covered:

•	Introduction	4
•	Conventions	5

NOTE: This manual makes references to the following GlobeCaster applications: GlobeCaster Switcher. If you are a *GlobeCaster Post* user, you will not have Globe-Caster Switcher. Document Overview

4 )))) Chapter 1

#### Introduction

	This manual explains how to use the GlobeCaster Editor, GlobeCaster's linear and non-linear (if Time Machine is installed) editor. It details how to use buttons, panels, and pop-up menus. It also includes tutorials. You will find the following sections in the manual:
Quick Start	A guided tour of the GlobeCaster Editor that helps new users get a feel for the application. It shows you how to add stills and effects to a timeline, and how to play them back.
Reference	A description of all the buttons, panels, and pop-up menus in the GlobeCaster Editor. There are also explanations about the interface, such as how to customize the layout or the parts of the timeline. It also explains functions you can perform with mouse or keyboard actions. You will also find instructions on how to use Time Machine to digitize clips in this chapter.
Tutorials	Step-by-step instructions and graphics show you how to perform basic to advanced editing tasks in the GlobeCaster Editor. You learn the basics of linear and non-linear editing, as well as how to create specific types of projects.
Appendices	A collection of information, including keyboard shortcuts and FAQ's.



Conventions				
Before you get too far into the manual, here are some of the convention appear within.				
General Conventions	The following form in this manual.	nats are used to identify special instructions or important points		
	1. (numbered)	Indicates step-by-step instructions to follow.		
	Bold Type	Indicates words you should type, buttons you should click, names of menus or windows, and file path names.		
	Italic Type	Indicates emphasis of important points.		
Mouse Conventions	GlobeCaster is des explains mouse co	igned for use with a two-button mouse. The following table mmands used in this manual.		
	Click	Place the mouse pointer over an object. Press the <i>left</i> mouse button and immediately release.		
	Click-and-drag	Place the mouse pointer over an object. Press the <i>left</i> mouse button. While holding the button down, move the mouse around. This is used mainly to draw boxes over objects to select them.		
	Double-click	Place the mouse pointer over an object. Press the <i>left</i> mouse button twice quickly and immediately release.		
	Drag-and-drop	Place the mouse pointer over an object. Press the <i>left</i> mouse button and hold it down. Drag (move) the object anywhere on your screen. When you release the mouse button, the object is dropped where the mouse pointer is aimed.		
	<b>Right-click</b>	Place the mouse pointer over an object. Press the <i>right</i> mouse button and immediately release.		

Document Overview







**CHAPTER 2** 



Editor Manual



#### Chapter 2 Quick Start

This section introduces you to editing on the GlobeCaster Editor timeline. The timeline provides a graphical representation of your projects, which makes it easy to trim or move events, such as clips and effects. While editing with the GlobeCaster Editor, you can scrub through your timeline and see every non-linear clip, dissolve, wipe, digital video effect, graphic, title, and still instantly in its full resolution without rendering.

In order to get you up and running so you can get a feel for how the GlobeCaster Editor timeline works, in this Quick Start you will use some of the framestores provided with GlobeCaster to place dissolves, wipes, digital video effects, and an overlay on your timeline. When you are ready to work with your own video sources, the tutorials in this book give you step-by-step directions on how to assign decks and tape names, log clips, build a timeline, and digitize clips (if you have Time Machine installed).

This Quick Start walks you through the following:

•	Adding events	10
•	Changing the duration of events	14
•	Creating cuts	16
•	Creating dissolves	18
•	Adding effects	21
•	Adding a graphic overlay	24
•	Using live video	26

Chapter 2 10

#### **Adding Events**

The first thing you'll do is add an event to the timeline. Events can be stills, linear or digital clips, transitions, or effects. But before you begin, let's take a quick look at the GlobeCaster Editor interface.

Shown below are two different GlobeCaster Editor interfaces, one for each model of GlobeCaster, Studio (Figure 2.1) and Post (Figure 2.2).



Figure 2.1: The Studio GlobeCaster Editor Interface

Editor Manual





Figure 2.2: The Post GlobeCaster Editor Interface

When you first open the GlobeCaster Editor, by default it has the settings you need to dive in and do this Quick Start. But if you or someone else has been exploring in it, check to see that the **2** button and **Add Clip** button are on (they are yellow when they are on). Also, make sure the right output monitor source button says **Timeline**. If it says **Recorder** or **Off**, right-click on it and select **Timeline** from the pop-up menu.

OK, you're ready to start having fun. Here's how to add an event to the timeline:

1. Find the following picon in the **\GlobeCaster\Bins\Stills\Manmade bin**. (For instructions on how to navigate through the bins, see the *GlobeCaster User Guide*.)



Figure 2.3: Still Picon

2. Double-click on the picon.

It is loaded onto the timeline.

12 Chapter 2

**TIP:** You can select multiple objects and drop them in the time-line. You can also drop multiple files onto the timeline. To do so, click on and hold the multiple files, drag the files to the timeline, and release the mouse button.



Figure 2.4: Picon on the Timeline

3. Click on the **Timeline** button on the toolbar (Figure 2.5).

Tin	neline But	ton		
	Timeline	Track 1 Video	A1 A2	Audio Scrub
	Recorder	00:00:00:01		Lock
	Source			
	N/A	Stopped	Eject	All Stop
Monitor Mute				

Figure 2.5: The Timeline Button

4. Click the **First Frame** button in the transport controls on the toolbar (Figure 2.6).



First Frame Button Figure 2.6: The First Frame Button



5. Click the **Play** button in the transport controls on the toolbar.



Play Button

Figure 2.7: The Play Button

You see the image on the right (output) monitor. You also see the **Position Bar**, a thin, black vertical line, move across the timeline while the timecode above the **Position Bar** changes, reflecting its current position.

You can also scrub through the timeline by clicking-and-dragging the Position Bar through the timeline. The GlobeCaster Editor instantly shows you the video at whatever position you move to.

- Scroom (scroll and zoom) bar Located at the bottom of the timeline, the scroom bar moves the timeline horizontally when you drag it to the left or the right, and zooms in and out when you drag it up or down.
- Sizing the timeline You can also zoom in and out by right-clicking on any gray area of the timeline. This brings up a pop-up menu with zoom selections. This pop-up menu also contains a **Fit All** option, which is handy for sizing the timeline so you can see everything on it.
- Position Bar You can place the Position Bar anywhere on the timeline by clicking where you would like it to appear.

**TIP:** The following functions help you move around on the timeline:

Chapter 2 14

#### Changing The Duration Of Events

Next you'll change the duration of the event you placed on the timeline. Trimming clips is easily done by clicking-and-dragging the trimming handles on the ends of each clip. Here's how to shorten the event you placed on the timeline:

1. Click on the trimming handle (the raised bar at the end of the clip) on the right side of the event and drag left to shrink the event bar (Figure 2.8).





The event is now shortened. To watch it, proceed to the next steps.

2. Click on the **Timeline** button on the toolbar (Figure 2.9).



Figure 2.9: The Timeline Button

3. Click the **First Frame** button in the transport controls on the toolbar (Figure 2.10).



Figure 2.10: The First Frame Button

Editor Manual



4. Click the **Play** button in the transport controls on the toolbar (Figure 2.11).

	Timeline Recorder Source N/A	Track 1 Video A1 A2   00: 00: 00: 01 I </th <th>Audio Scrub Lock</th>	Audio Scrub Lock
Monitor Mute		Play	Button

Figure 2.11: The Play Button

The length of time the still image is on the screen decreases.

Now you're ready to add another event to the timeline and create some transitions.

Chapter 2 16

**Creating Cuts** 

Next you'll add another event and watch the cut between the two events.

1. Locate another still, such as the following one from the \GlobeCaster\Bins\Stills\Manmade bin.



Figure 2.12: Still Picon

2. Double-click on the picon to load it into the timeline (Figure 2.13). You can also drag the picon from the bin to the timeline.

Figure 2.13: Two Clips on the Timeline

3. Click the **Timeline** button on the toolbar (Figure 2.14).



Figure 2.14: The Timeline Button

**TIP:** If the timeline is zoomed out and you want to see all of your clips, right-click in a gray area of the timeline and choose **Fit All** from the popup menu.



4. Click the **First Frame** button in the transport controls on the toolbar (Figure 2.15).

	Timeline	Track 1 Video	A1 A2	Audio Scrub
	Recorder	00:00:00:01		Lock
	Source			
	N/A	Stopped	Eject	All Stop
Monitor Mute				

First Frame Button

Figure 2.15: The First Frame Button

5. Click the **Play** button in the transport controls on the toolbar (Figure 2.16).

	Recorder Source N/A	00: 00: 00: 01	Eject	All Stop
Monitor Mute				

Figure 2.16: The Play Button

This time, as you watch the right (output) monitor, the GlobeCaster Editor performs a cut as it reaches the end of the first event and the beginning of the next.

**18** )))) Chapter 2

#### **Creating Dissolves**

Next you'll create a dissolve between the two events. One of the great things about the GlobeCaster Editor is that it makes it easy to create this common transition.

To create a dissolve, do the following:

1. Click on the second event, drag it to the track below, and drop it. Drag the second clip to the left so that the two clips overlap (Figure 2.17).



Figure 2.17: Second Event In Place

2. In the overlapped area, right-click on either event and choose **Create Dissolve** from the pop-up menu (Figure 2.18).

Save	Delete Event Delete Selected Events Snap	N/A S
	Select All Select Track Select None Invert Track Invert Selection Select From Here Select From Here on This Track	
	Properties Higher Priority Digitize to Time Machine <b>Create Dissolve</b> Show filenames upon selection Flatten Event	

Figure 2.18: Choosing Create Dissolve

A new track called FX (effects) appears directly below the two video tracks (Figure 2.19). The tan bar that appears in this track represents the transition between the two events.

Editor Manual



**NOTE:** A simple dissolve appears in the FX track as a tancolored bar. If you drag one of Globe-Caster's effects into the FX track (which we will do shortly), the effect's picon is displayed. The numbers on the bar, such as 1>2, indicate the transition will switch from the image source on the Video 1 (top) track to the image on the Video 2 (second) track.

01:00:00:00	01:00:02:26
	1>2



3. Click the **Timeline** button on the toolbar (Figure 2.20).

Time	eline Butto	วท		
	Timeline Recorder	Track 1 Video	A1 A2	Audio Scrub Lock
Monitor Mute	N/A	Stopped	Eject	All Stop

Figure 2.20: The Timeline Button

4. Click the **First Frame** button in the transport controls on the toolbar (Figure 2.21).

Timeline	Track 1 Video A1	A2 Audio Scrub
Recorder	00:00:00:01	Lock
Source		
N/A	Stopped	ect All Stop

First Frame Button Figure 2.21: The First Frame Button

5. Click the **Play** button in the transport controls on the toolbar (Figure 2.22).

	Recorder Source	00:00:00:01		Loc
fonitor Mute	N/A	Stopped	Eject	All Stop

Figure 2.22: The Play Button



On the right (output) monitor, you see a smooth dissolve between the two events instead of the cut you saw before.

At this point you have already mastered some of the basics of editing in the GlobeCaster Editor timeline: adding events, changing their duration, and creating transitions. The next section shows you how to easily jazz up your project by dropping effects into the timeline.



#### Adding Effects

In this section, you will use effects instead of dissolves to transition between events. First, you will add two more events. Then, you will add three effects. Here's how to add effects to the timeline:

1. Choose two more picons from the \GlobeCaster\Bins\Stills\Manmade bin.



Figure 2.23: Two Events to Add to the Timeline

2. Drag the picons into the timeline, placing them in alternating video tracks (Figure 2.24). Place them so the events overlap.

		01:00:04:11	01:00:05:00
 52 231	5		

Figure 2.24: Four Events with Dissolves

3. Right-click on an event in each overlap area, and select **Create Dissolve** from the pop-up menu.

You should have three dissolves on your timeline (previous figure).

4. Locate the following picons in the \GlobeCaster\Bins\Fx\Sampler bin.



Figure 2.25: Effect Picons

5. Drag-and-drop each picon onto a dissolve event on the FX track (Figure 2.26).

**TIP:** If the timeline is zoomed in and you want to see all of your clips, right-click in a gray area of the timeline and choose **Fit All** from the pop-up menu.



NOTE: The Globe-Caster Editor scales the duration of any effect you drop on an existing transition event if it can. Some effects are a fixed length. In this case the length of the effect may not match the length of the overlap between the events, and you need to scale the lengths of the clips or move them on the timeline to fit the effect. For information on how to trim or move clips, see "Building A Time-line" on page 198.



Figure 2.26: Three Effects in Timeline

You see the effects picons replace the tan-colored bars.

6. Click the **Timeline** button on the toolbar (Figure 2.27).



Figure 2.27: The Timeline Button

7. Click the **First Frame** button in the transport controls on the toolbar (Figure 2.28).

Timeline	Track 1 Video A1 A	2 Audio Scrub
Recorder	00:00:00:01	Lock
Source		
N/A	Stopped	ct All Stop

First Frame Button Figure 2.28: The First Frame Button

8. Click the **Play** button in the transport controls on the toolbar (Figure 2.29).

Timeline	Track 1 Video	A1 A2	Audio Scrub
Recorder	00:00:00:01		Lock
Source			
N/A	Stopped	Eject	All Stop

Play Button Figure 2.29: The Play Button

Editor Manual



In the right (output) monitor, you see the GlobeCaster Editor play through the timeline, performing the effects between each event.

If you want to save your timeline at this point, do the following:

1. Click on the **Timeline** Picon in the toolbar (Figure 2.30).

Timeline	Trim Clip	2 3 4
	Trim Edit	Add Clip
	Slip Src	Trans Edit
	Slide	View
Save	New	Ripple

Figure 2.30: The Timeline Picon

2. Drag the picon into the bin where you want to save it.

Your timeline is saved. To clear the timeline, click the **New** button to the right of the Timeline Picon. To reload your saved timeline, double-click on its picon in the bin or drag it onto the timeline area.

Now that you've learned how to include effects in your projects, feel free to experiment with the other effects included with GlobeCaster to see what they do. When you're ready, the next section shows you how to add a graphic overlay to this timeline.

Chapter 2 24

#### Adding A Graphic Overlay

An overlay event combines with video events, rather than replacing them. In this section, you will add a spinning globe lower third overlay to your timeline.

First, you will change the effects you added in the last section to dissolves (some of them use the downstream key that the overlay will need). Here's how:

1. Right-click on the effects and choose **Replace with Dissolve** from the pop-up menu.

The effects are replaced with dissolves (Figure 2.31).



Figure 2.31: Dissolves on Timeline

2. Locate the following picon in the \GlobeCaster\Bins\Fx\Sampler bin.



Figure 2.32: Overlay Effect Picon

3. Drag the picon into the timeline and drop it anywhere.

A new track labeled **DSK** (downstream key) appears on the timeline, and the picon is located on this track.



Figure 2.33: Graphic Overlay on Timeline

You can move this event around and increase or decrease its duration as you wish. An overlay element appears on the video at the point in the timeline where its left



edge appears, and goes away when the right edge is reached. The video is not otherwise affected. This means that the graphic overlay can appear on top of one or more video events.

4. Click the **Timeline** button on the toolbar (Figure 2.34).



Figure 2.34: The Timeline Button

5. Click the **First Frame** button in the transport controls on the toolbar (Figure 2.35).

Timeline	Track 1 Video	A1 A2	Audio Scrub
Recorder	00:00:00:01		Lock
Source			
N/A	Stopped	Elect	All Stop

First Frame Button Figure 2.35: The First Frame Button

6. Click the **Play** button in the transport controls on the toolbar (Figure 2.36).



Play Button

In the right (output) monitor, you see the GlobeCaster Editor play through the timeline with the overlay appearing over the events where you placed it.

At this point, you've gotten a feel for working in the GlobeCaster Editor timeline. If you'd like to try working with live video rather than stills, go on to the next section.

Figure 2.36: The Play Button

**26** )))) Chapter 2

#### Live Input Events

So far, you have been using stills rather than tape or live sources. You can replace these still images with live video inputs quite easily. If your GlobeCaster has video sources connected to inputs, do the following:

1. Locate the following picons in the **\GlobeCaster\Bins\Clips\Live** bin. For definitions of the input picons, See "Live Input Picons" on page 27.



Figure 2.37: Input Picons

2. Drag-and-drop the picons for the inputs you have video sources connected to onto the stills on your timeline, alternating between them. For example, if you have sources connected to inputs 1 and 2, your timeline looks like this:



Figure 2.38: Live Events on the Timeline



3. Click the **Timeline** button on the toolbar (Figure 2.39).



Figure 2.39: The Timeline Button

4. Click the **First Frame** button in the transport controls on the toolbar (Figure 2.40).



First Frame Button Figure 2.40: The First Frame Button

5. Click the **Play** button in the transport controls on the toolbar (Figure 2.41).

Timeline	Track I Video	AI AZ	Audio Scrub	
Recorder	00:00:00:01		Lock	
Source				
N/A	Stopped	Eject	All Stop	

Play Button *Figure 2.41: The Play Button* 

You see the transitions between the live video in the right (output) monitor.

In this Quick Start, you have learned the basics of working on the GlobeCaster Editor timeline. When you're ready to work with your own clips, try the tutorials in this book. They teach you to assign your decks, log clips, build more complicated timelines, and batch digitize your clips (if you have Time Machine installed).

Live Input Picons Here are descriptions of the input icons:

**Live Audio 1-4**—Records the audio from the source(s) connected to the audio inputs. Picon one (1) represents the first stereo pair of audio inputs, two (2) the second, etc.

## **28** Chapter 2

**Live Video 1-8**—Records the video from the source(s) connected to the video inputs.

**Mute**—Used to erase audio on the record deck. To use this icon, drag the icon on onto the timeline (Figure 2.42). Then perform the clip to mute the record tape. There must be overlapping audio from other sources to achieve silence.



Figure 2.42: Muted Clip

**Out**—Used for recursive effects. Drag this picon onto the timeline for a reverb type sound. For best results, leave the sound between four and six decibels. Out video recursion produces repeated video (Figure 2.43).



Figure 2.43: Using the Out Button for a Recursive Effect







#### Chapter 3 **Reference**

This section of the manual documents how each button, panel, and pop-up menu of the GlobeCaster Editor software operates. The explanations of these functions are grouped according to the following topics:

•	Introduction to the interface	2
•	Customizing the interface	4
•	Using monitor and transport controls 42	3
•	Working with clips	0
•	Working with timelines	1
•	Timeline Pop-Up Menu	9
•	Using advanced editing modes 124	4
•	Timeline Flattening 13	5
•	Digitizing with Time Machine	8
•	Animating audio on the timeline 155	5
•	Mixing audio 16	1
•	Using options and application buttons 170	0

Reference

32 Chapter 3

#### Introduction To The Interface

When you first open the GlobeCaster Editor, you see two monitors in the middle of the top of the screen, with bins next to them on the sides of the screen (Figure 3.1). For information on changing the interface, see "Customizing The Interface" on page 34.



Figure 3.1: The GlobeCaster Editor Interface

The main toolbar for the GlobeCaster Editor is across the middle part of the screen (Figure 3.2).





Buttons on the toolbar are grouped according to function, as shown in the previous figure. Options that are not currently available are grayed out. This includes buttons for non-linear editing if Time Machine is not installed.

In addition to the toolbar buttons, there is a set of transport controls under each monitor. These controls change for some editing modes.


As well as the toolbar and transport control buttons, there are a number of panels and pop-up menus that are accessed by right-clicking.

The following sections begin with an explanation of how to customize the GlobeCaster Editor interface, and then describe the functions of each group of buttons on the interface, as well as associated panels and pop-up menus. For information on how to use the bins and general information on navigating in GlobeCaster, see "The GlobeCaster Interface" and "Basic Functions" chapters in the *GlobeCaster User Guide*.

34 Chapter 3

## **Customizing The Interface**

The GlobeCaster Editor interface layout is flexible, and the default layout that you see when you first open the GlobeCaster Editor can be modified in several ways to suit your needs. You can choose to display one, two, three, or four monitors; change the size and number of open bins; and change the size of the timeline.

**Monitors** You can choose to display two, three, or four monitors by clicking on the blue **2**, **3**, or **4** buttons in the **Timeline Controls** on the toolbar.



Figure 3.3: The GlobeCaster Editor Interface with Four Monitors Displayed

The right monitor displays the output (timeline or record deck), and the left monitors display inputs. When three or four monitors are displayed, they replace the bin windows at the top of the screen.

In most of the six editing modes you can select the number of monitors you wish to view, but in the **Trans Edit** (Transition Edit) mode four monitors are required and are automatically displayed.

To return to the layout you saw when you opened the GlobeCaster Editor, with two monitors and bins at the top, click on the blue **Add Clip** button on the toolbar. **Add Clip** is the default editing mode.

**NOTE:** Your PC monitor must be set to 1280-by-1024 resolution to see all four monitors. This is the minimum resolution required for Globe-Caster software.



You can also choose to display one large monitor by clicking on the blue **View** button in the **Timeline Controls** on the toolbar.



Figure 3.4: The GlobeCaster Editor Interface with the View Monitor Displayed

This monitor displays the output, and is useful for reviewing the final output of your project.

To return to the layout you saw when you opened the GlobeCaster Editor, with two monitors and bins at the top, click on the blue **Add Clip** button on the toolbar.

36 Chapter 3 Bins

You can also change the layout of the interface by changing the number of bins open. One way to do this is to toggle on or off the bins at the top and bottom of the screen. Another way to do this is to resize bins and open new bin windows.

### Toggling Top and Bottom Bins On and Off

To toggle on and off the bins at the top and bottom of the screen, click on the gray **Top Bins** or **Btm Bins** buttons on the right side of the toolbar. The Figure 3.5 shows the GlobeCaster Editor with top bins off and bottoms bins on.



Figure 3.5: The GlobeCaster Editor Interface with Bottom Bins Open and Top Bins Closed

To return to the default layout, click on the **Btm Bins** button to toggle the bottom bins off and the **Top Bins** button to toggle the tops bins on.

### **Resizing Bins and Opening New Bins**

You can also resize bins and open new ones. To do this, do the following:



- Clips sourc Gpi Live Projects Clipbo.Ree Live\_04.0; Live\_12.1: Matte Blac Promo.lcp Eastime.Re
- 1. Click on a corner of the bin so that the border turns white (Figure 3.6).

Figure 3.6: Clicking on the Corner of a Bin

Drag your mouse upward to move the bottom edge of the bin up.
You see dark stripes in the blank area below the bin (Figure 3.7).



3. Right-click in the blank area. You see a pop-up menu.



Figure 3.7: The Bin Pop-Up Menu

4. Select **New Bin Window** from the pop-up menu.



A new bin appears in the space that previously was blank (Figure 3.8).



Figure 3.8: The New Bin



You can open new bins in the bin windows at the top and bottom of the screen. Figure 3.9 shows the GlobeCaster Editor interface with four bins open in the top bin windows.



Figure 3.9: The GlobeCaster Editor Interface with Four Bins Open



**Timelines** You can also change the size of the timeline on the interface. You might want to do this if you want to open only one bottom bin. To do this, click on the corner of the timeline window and drag it to resize the timeline smaller. Then right-click in the blank area and choose **New Bin Window** from the pop-up menu.

You can open more than one timeline window at once, but both show the currently loaded timeline. This could be handy if you want to see two sections of a single timeline on the screen at the same time. To do this, repeat the steps above, except select **New Timeline Window** from the pop-up menu. You can open timelines in the bin areas at the top of the screen, but because this space is narrower it is more likely that you'll want to open them in the bin/timeline area across the bottom of the screen.

Figure 3.10 shows the GlobeCaster Editor interface with two windows of the same timeline open.



Figure 3.10: The GlobeCaster Editor Interface with Two Views of the Timeline

Once you have the interface set up the way you want, you can save the layout (as you can in all GlobeCaster applications). To do this, right-click in the gray area at the bottom of a bin and select **Save Layout** from the pop-up menu. A picon representing the layout appears in the bin (Figure 3.11). Saving the layout also

42 )))) Chapter 3

saves any bin sorting and picon display options you have selected. (For information on how to set bin properties, see the *GlobeCaster User Guide*.)



Figure 3.11: Picon for a Saved Layout

As in all GlobeCaster applications, you can set up any number of layouts, one for each project if you want. The GlobeCaster Editor opens with the last layout you saved. If you want a different layout, double-click on the picon for that layout.

Now that you know how to set up the interface to suit your needs, the following sections will explain the functions of the buttons on the interface, as well as associated panels and pop-up menus.



## Using Monitor And Transport Controls

Control buttons under each monitor and on the toolbar allow you to create and edit clips. Transport controls allow you to control your RS-422a decks and to play digitized clips if you have Time Machine installed.

The Main Controls on the toolbar control the source that is selected there: **Timeline, Recorder,** or **Source**. If **Source** is chosen here, and you have three or four monitors displayed, the Main Controls manipulate the active source. Select which one is active by clicking on the monitor panel's **Source Type** button.

The right monitor is the output monitor. The controls under that monitor control either the timeline or record deck, and are the same for both outputs. The other monitors display input sources, which you select from a pop-up menu. The controls under these monitors change depending on which editing mode is selected. The following sections explain how to use the various monitor and transport controls.

## Main Controls

The Main Controls are the blue buttons (yellow when they are turned on) in the center of the toolbar. They control the source you select, **Timeline, Recorder,** or **Source**.



Figure 3.12: The Main Controls

Here's how the Main Control buttons work:

44 )))	Chapter 3
--------	-----------

Timeline

Selects the timeline as the source controlled by these transport buttons, allowing you to play through the timeline. Selects program out to be played on the external monitor and on the on-screen monitor. Fades out audio from other sources that may be playing at the same time.

If you are doing non-linear editing (you have Time Machine installed), you can scrub through everything on the timeline. If you are doing linear editing, these buttons allow you to see transitions and stills. The clips themselves, however, do not play in order to save wear and tear on your VTRs. However, if you would like to scrub through your clips, you can do so by turning on **Tape Scrub** in the **Editor Options** panel (see "Tape Scrub" on page 95 for information on how to do this).

**Recorder** Selects a record deck as the source controlled by these transport buttons. Selects the video from the record deck's input module to be played as program out on the external monitor and the on-screen monitor. Plays audio from the record deck.

If you have more than one record deck, right-click on the **Recorder** button to select the record deck you want to activate from the pop-up menu. (If you do not see the deck you want listed, check its configuration in the **Serial Devices** panel. Since it is a record deck, make sure you have assigned it an output slot. For more information on the **Serial Devices** panel, see the "Using Configure Panels" chapter in the *GlobeCaster User Guide*.)

GlobeCaster

Sets the active input source as the source controlled by these Main Controls. Selects that source as program out to be played on the external monitor.

When you click on this Source button in the Main Controls, the Source Type button under the left

Source Deck A

Figure 3.13: The Source Type Button Under the Left Monitor Whichever source you have the Source Type button under the left monitor set to (Source A, Source B, Source C, Clip, Frame, Matte, or Black), is now the

Source A, Source B, and Source C are your input decks. Before you can switch between them here, you need to assign which deck is Source A, B, or C. To assign decks as Source A, B, or C, first right-click on the Source Type button (upper left button) under one of the left monitors and choose Source A (or B or **C**) from the pop-up menu. Then move down to the Main Controls and right-click on this Source button. From the pop-up menu, choose the deck you

For example, to assign a deck as Source A, do the

Right-click on the Source Type button under one of

source controlled by the Main Controls.

would like to assign.

the left monitors (Figure 3.14.

following:

Fades in audio of the source has audio.

monitor(s) lights up (Figure 3.13).

Source A

Source





Source A - DVIO3 (in slot 3) [Reel1] Clip Frame Matte Black Live
✓ Details ✓ Always show Original Source In & Out

Figure 3.14: Right-Clicking on the Source Type Button Under a Left Monitor

Select **Source A** from the pop-up menu.

Right-click on the **Source** button in the Main Controls (Figure 3.15).

Timeline	Track 1	Video	A1 A2	Audio Scru	Jb
Recorder	00:00:0	00:00	1		ock
Source			I I>I		
Black		1	Eject	All Sto	p

Figure 3.15: The Source Button in the Main Controls

A pop-up menu listing your decks appears.



Figure 3.16: The Source Button Pop-Up Menu



configuration in the Serial Devices panel. For more information on the **Serial Devices** panel, see the "Using Configure Panels" chapter in the GlobeCaster User Guide. Select the deck you wish to assign as Source A from the pop-up menu. The deck you selected is now assigned as Source A. Once you have assigned your source decks, you can switch between them by choosing Source A, B, or C from the Source Type buttons under the left monitors. TIP: The GlobeCaster Editor disables all controls on the source panel if it is unable to use the deck. It displays a message indicating the nature of the problem. After assigning a deck to a source, the controls may remain disabled if, for example, the deck has no tape in it or the tape needs to be named. **Tape Name** Lists the name of the active source/output. Click on it to see a pop-up menu listing the loaded sources. (Frame, Record #, In the example at the beginning of this section, the Reel #, Clip) source is an unnamed framestore, and the default name is Frame. Other defaults are Record # for a record tape, Reel # for a source tape, and Clip for a digitized clip. To choose an input or record tape already used, click on this Tape Name button and choose the item from the pop-up menu. You can click on this button to see a pop-up menu listing the sources of the active type (selected with the **Source Type** button; see previous definition) loaded into each monitor. Load files into a monitor by clicking on them or dragging them from a bin into a monitor. (Whether you single-click or double-click to load files into monitors depends on the setting you select for Load files to source in the Editor Options

If the deck you want is not listed, check its

select for **Load** files to source in the **Editor Options** panel. For information on this function, see "Editor Options Panel" on page 93.) For framestores, matte colors, and digitized clips, each monitor has a separate list of files loaded into it. For deck sources, however, all tapes assigned for a project are listed so you can swap tapes around in your decks as you wish.



*TIP*: You can quickly switch between loaded files by selecting them from this pop-up menu. Then, you can adjust their length by using the **Duration** timecode box, and click **Splice** to place them on the timeline.

You can replace the default names of tapes and clips. It is particularly important to name source tapes so the GlobeCaster Editor (and you) can keep track of them. If several of your source tapes are named **Reel 2**, for example, the GlobeCaster Editor assumes they are the same tape and cannot distinguish between them when assembling a timeline. To avoid this, it is best to give the tape the same name in the GlobeCaster Editor as the name that appears on the spine of the tape.

To name a source tape, do the following:

Set the **Source Type** button under the left monitor (Figure 3.17) to one of your source decks, **Source A**, **Source B**, or **Source C**.

Make sure the **Source** button (see the previous definition for an explanation of this button) is on.



Figure 3.17: The Source Button in the Main Controls

Click on the Tape Name button (Figure 3.18).





Figure 3.18: Clicking on the Tape Name Button

The **Tape Properties** pop-up menu appears (Figure 3.19).

Tape P New Ta	Timeline Recorder roperties	Track 1 00:00:0 Stoppe	Vide
Record Reel1 √Reel2	11	01:00:	00:00

Figure 3.19: The Tape Properties Pop-Up Menu

Choose New Tape from the pop-up menu.

The GlobeCaster Editor assigns a default name to the tape (**Reel #**), which appears on the **Tape Name** button.

To change the default name, click on the **Tape Name** button again and choose **Tape Properties** from the pop-up menu.

The **Tape Properties** panel appears (Figure 3.20). (See "Tape Properties Panel" on page 56 for information on how to use this panel).



Tape Properties
Reel1 Recordable
Tape Name
Namo
Name
Value
Delete
Default settings for new clips from this tape
Use Video Audio Properties
Tape Color Correction Setup Use
NLR Color Correction Setup Use
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

Figure 3.20: The Tape Properties Panel

Type in the name of the tape (the example uses **DemoTape**) in the box above **Tape Name**.

The name of the tape appears on the **Tape Name** button.

The tape name is also now listed on the pop-up menu (Figure 3.21).

	Timeline	Trac
	Recorder	00:
Tape F New T	Properties ape	s
Record Reel1	d1	01
✓ Reel2		

Figure 3.21: The Tape Name on the Pop-Up Menu

GlobeCaster ( 51

To delete the name of a tape from the **Tape Properties** pop-up menu, click on the Options button on the right side of the GlobeCaster Editor toolbar. This opens the **Editor Options** panel (Figure 3.22).



Figure 3.22: The Editor Options Panel

Click on the Remove Unused Tapes button.

For information on how to rename a clip, see "Current Clip Picon Pop-Up Menu" on page 72.

**52** Chapter 3

Track 1,
Track 2,
Track 3

Determines which track of the timeline clips are placed on when you use the Splice, AutoSplice, or **Overwrite buttons.** (For an explanation of these buttons, see "Right Monitor Controls" on page 59.) Click on the Track button and select the track you want from the pop-up menu. (You only see the popup menu if you are using more than one video track on the timeline.) You can also use this feature if you want to split a clip on the timeline where there are clips in more than one track. Click on this button to select the track of the clip you want to split from a pop-up menu. Then place the Position Bar where you want to split the clip, and click the Split button or press **Control** + s on the keyboard. Or, you can rightclick on the clip you want to split, and choose Split at PosBar from the pop-up menu. In this case, you do not need to use the Track buttons, because the clip you right-click on is the one that is split.

Video, A1, A2, These are master record safes, turning off the ability A3, A4 to record to the record tape. If these buttons are lighted, that channel is recorded over. For most applications, these buttons should be left on, or your master won't match your timeline. Turning these buttons off could be useful if, for example, you already have audio laid down on the record tape and want to prevent recording over the audio. Buttons that are grayed out are not active for your deck configuration. Turn them on in the Serial Devices configure panel (for information on how to use this panel, see the GlobeCaster User Guide). Timecode Displays the position of the current source. Window

Shuttle Slider,<br/>Lock ButtonUsed just like a shuttle control on a deck. The further<br/>the slider is pulled from the center, the faster the tape<br/>travels. Tapes can be shuttled backward or forward. If<br/>the Lock button is on, the slider snaps back to center<br/>(and pauses the tape) when you stop dragging it.



Transport Controls	Control the selected device. The buttons, in order from left to right, are:
	First Frame
_	Moves to the first frame.
	Rewind
	Rewinds
	Reverse Play
	Plays in reverse
	Jog Back 1 Frame
	Moves back one frame at a time
	Pause
_	Puts deck in Pause mode, pausing playback if the deck is rolling, or spooling the tape so it is ready to play if the deck is stopped.
	Jog Forward 1 Frame
	Moves ahead one frame at a time
	Play
	Plays normally
	Fast Forward
	Fast forwards
M	Last Frame
	Moves to the last frame
- <b>1</b>	Stop
	One click stops the current source; two clicks despools the tape
	<i>TIP</i> : Usually the space bar acts as <b>All Stop</b> for all decks or processes in progress. However, if the <b>Timeline</b> is selected as your output, it toggles between <b>Play</b> and <b>Pause</b> .
Source Status (Stopped)	Displays the status of the selected source. In the example at the beginning of this section, this is <b>Stopped</b> .
Eject	Ejects the tape in the deck currently being controlled.
All Stop	Stops all controlled equipment or processes in progress, such as timeline assembly or digitizing clips.

~

54	)))	Chapter 3
----	-----	-----------

- Message Area Lists important messages. If your decks don't respond properly, check here to see what the problem is and how to resolve it. This is also where you see prompts to swap source tapes. If the message is too long to read all of it, right-click on the message area and it brings up the message in a pop-up box.
- **OK** Clears messages in the Message Area.
- **Preview** Shows what an edit looks like without actually recording it. The type of preview performed depends on the **Preview Mode** selected in the **Editor Options** panel (see "Editor Options Panel" on page 93). To use this, select one or more events on the timeline, then click **Preview**. You must have a striped tape in the record deck and set the in point for the record deck in order to use this function. (See "Striping A Tape" on page 189 and "Setting the Recorder's In Point" on page 198 for instructions on how to do these.)
- Review Plays back and reviews the edit that was just laid down onto the master tape. Or, reviews the spot on the record tape that is about to be recorded over. To check what is on your record tape before laying down a clip in that spot, click on a clip on the timeline to select it, then click the **Review** button. On the output (right) monitor, you see what is on the record tape at the timecode where the new clip would be recorded. Perform Records individual edits to the master tape. When you select clips or effects and click Perform, the GlobeCaster Editor records just those events from the timeline. (To select multiple clips or events, hold down the **Control** key and click on the items.) As edits are performed, the Validation Bar at the top of

the Timeline changes color to reflect the sections that have already been laid down to the master. Green sections have been recorded, red sections have not.



Assemble Assembles (records) the entire timeline, or whichever events haven't already been recorded. You can tell which events have been recorded by looking at the **Validation Bar** above the timeline. Green sections have been recorded, red have not.

If you have already recorded some events on the timeline, but you want them to be re-recorded the next time you assemble the timeline, you can click on **Reset timeline for assembly** in the **Editor Options** panel. In this panel you can also choose between two modes for assembling timelines, **Sequential** or **Checkerboard** (see "Editor Options Panel" on page 93 for information on how to use this panel).

56 Chapter 3

Tape Properties Panel In the **Tape Properties** panel, you can name tapes, record data about them, or access the **Tape Audio Properties** panel. To access the **Tape Properties** panel, click on the **Tape Name** button in the Main Controls (Figure 3.23).



Figure 3.23: Clicking on the Tape Name Button

Select **Tape Properties** from the pop-up menu. The **Tape Properties** panel appears.

Tape Properties
Reel2 Recordable
Tape Name
Name
Value
) Delete
Default settings for new clips from this tape
Use Video Audio Properties
Tape Color Correction Setup
NLR Color Correction Setup

Figure 3.24: The Tape Properties Panel

Here's how to use the panel:

Tape NameType in the name of the tape and press Enter in<br/>your keyboard. It appears on the Tape Name<br/>button, and on the Tape Properties pop-up menu.After you change a tape's name, the GlobeCaster<br/>Editor searches the current project and changes all<br/>clips logged from that tape so that your clips<br/>remained linked to the correct tape.



Recordable Designates a tape as a record tape. This light must be on in order to record to a tape. However, if you use the default **Record1** name for the tape in your record deck, this button is automatically turned on. Turning on this button also adds the name of the record tape from the current timeline to the tape list when you create a new timeline. Audio Opens the Tape Audio Properties panel, where you **Properties** can set the audio levels the tape (see "Tape Audio Properties Panel" on page 161). The levels you set here apply to all clips made from the tape, unless you set different levels for individual clips in the Clip Audio Properties panel (see "Clip Audio Properties" on page 164). Be sure to set the audio properties before you log clips. Changing the properties does not affect clips

that have already been logged.



Name, Value

These fields give you a place to record notes about your tapes. You can create any category you want in the **Name** field, and enter your notes in the **Value** field.

To use this feature, in the **Name** field type in the name of attributes regarding the tape, such as Date, Created By, Project Name, Storage Location, etc. Then, type in the information for the attribute in the **Value** box. For example, if you typed in Date in the **Name** field, enter the date, such as 2/29/00, in the **Value** field.

The attribute from the Name field appears in the display window above these two fields. Click on an attribute to select it. The selected attribute has a check mark next to it, and you see the information entered in the **Value** box. A scroll bar appears to the right of the window if needed.

Tape Properties
Reel2 Recordable
Tape Name
✓ Project Name
Date
Created By
Storage Location
Tape Format
Project Name Name GlobeCaster Demo Value Delete Default settings for new clips from this tape Use Video Audio Properties
Tape Color Correction Setup Use
NLR Color Correction Setup Use

Figure 3.25: The Name and Value Fields and Display Window

Delete

Deletes the selected attribute. The selected attribute has a check mark next to it in the display window above the **Name** box.

GlobeCaster

#### **Right Monitor Controls** Generally, the right monitor displays your output. The transport controls under the right monitor allow you to control the source you select there, **Recorder** or **Timeline**. You can also set it to **Off**. In the advanced editing modes, the right monitor displays frames from your clips to assist in specific editing tasks. In this case, the controls also change according to the function of the editing mode (see "Using Advanced Editing Modes" on page 124 for information on the monitor controls in these modes).

Figure 3.26 shows the right monitor controls in the default editing mode, **Add Clip**.



Figure 3.26: The Right Monitor Transport Controls

Here's how these buttons work:

Timeline/ Recorder/ TM Recorder/ Off	Selects which output is displayed by the monitor and controlled by its buttons. The right monitor displays the timeline or the record deck. Right-click on the button to select <b>Timeline</b> , <b>Recorder</b> , <b>TM</b> <b>Recorder</b> , or <b>Off</b> from the pop-up menu. The <b>Off</b> option is provided in case you do not want to watch the tapes shuttling while the timeline is assembled. When you select <b>TM Recorder</b> , the Time Machine Recorder Panel is displayed. For more information on this panel, see "Time Machine Recorder Panel" on page 64.
Timecode Window	Indicates the timecode on the VTR currently being controlled. Timecode is in standard SMPTE format (HH:MM:SS:FF).

60 )))) Chapter 3

Mark In/ Mark Out Replaces the selected clip in the timeline with one that you mark. For example, you can click on a clip on the timeline so that it is selected, adjust the **in** and/or **out** point of the clip, then click **Replace**. The new version of the clip replaces the original one on the timeline. Changing the **in** point of the clip will move the start point of the clip on the timeline, and changing the **out** point of the clip will change the clip's **end** point on the timeline. Modifying only the **in** point or only the **out** point will change the clip's duration; modifying both may also change the duration.

You can also use the **Replace** button in conjunction with a source's in point, out point, and duration timecodes to trim an event on the timeline. When you click on an event on the timeline, the Source **Type** button under the active left monitor changes to match the event type: Source A (or B or C) for a linear clip, **Clip** for a digitized clip, **Frame** for a framestore, etc. You can type in the source in and out points you want for the event in the In Point and **Out Point** timecode boxes to slip the source. You can also type in the duration you want for the event in the **Duration** timecode box under the left monitor and click the Replace button. The new version of the event, of the duration you specified, replaces the previous one on the timeline. This method is convenient when you want to trim an event to a precise length.

Using both monitors' **In Point** timecode boxes and the **Replace** button is similar to using the mouse to drag the left handle of the clip in the timeline.

In Point/OutDisplays the in and out points of a selected item, orPointDisplays the in and out points on the timelineTimecodethe timecode of the in and out points on the timelinethat you mark with the Mark In, Mark Outbuttons. You can also enter the desired timecodehere and press the Enterbutton on your keyboardto set the in and out points.

**Splice** This button becomes active when a clip is created. Clicking this places the newly created clip into the timeline at the position of the Position Bar. It splits any existing clip, placing the remainder of the existing clip at the end of the new clip. If the **Ripple** button on the toolbar is turned on, any existing clips beyond the spliced one are moved down the timeline (see "Ripple" on page 90 for information on this function).



AutoSplice	Automatically places clips onto the timeline at the Position Bar as you log them. You can use this when logging clips from either linear or digitized sources. Click the <b>Mark In</b> and <b>Mark Out</b> buttons to log the clips. Your clips appear on the timeline as you mark them.
Overwrite	Splices in a newly created clip at the Position Bar, but instead of moving existing clips down the timeline, it overwrites what was after the Position Bar for the duration of the clip being added.
Auto3Pnt (Auto 3 Point)	Used for three-point editing. This means that once you define three of the four timecode points relating to the clip (in and out point on the source tape, and in and out point on the timeline), the GlobeCaster Editor automatically places the clip on the timeline. The GlobeCaster Editor always calculates the fourth point, but when Auto 3 Point is on it automatically places the clip on the timeline after you mark the third point.
	For example, you can mark the in and out points of your clip, and then mark the in point on the timeline where you want it to start. Since the GlobeCaster Editor already knows the duration, it can calculate the out point on the timeline and place the clip in the correct spot. Or, you can mark the in and out points on the timeline where you want the clip to go, and then mark the in or out point of the clip. Since the GlobeCaster Editor knows the duration from the timeline timecode, it can calculate the other point for the clip and place it on the timeline.
AutoBatch	Automatically adds clips to the Batch List in the Batch Digitize window for later digitizing as you mark them. When using <b>AutoBatch</b> , you must click the <b>New Clip</b> button (top right) in order to clear the previous clip before logging the next clip, unless you click <b>Splice</b> or <b>Overwrite</b> .
	Sending your clips to the Batch Digitize window does not save them. To save them, you must open the Batch Digitize window and either digitize the clips or save the To do list before exiting the GlobeCaster Editor. See "Digitizing With Time Machine" on page 138 for information on how to use the Batch Digitize window.

<b>62</b> )))) Chapter 3		
New (	Clip	Clears the settings so you can create a new clip. If you are logging clips from a source deck, this resets the <b>Clip Properties</b> to the default for the tape.
		You must click this button if a source panel contains information about an event selected on the timeline and you wish to mark a new clip.
Cue I	n	Shuttles the Position Bar in the timeline or moves the record tape to the timecode in the window to the left. Or, you can enter a timecode in the timecode display window to the left, then click <b>Cue In</b> . The Position Bar jumps to this point.
Cue C	Dut	Shuttles the Position Bar in the timeline or moves the record tape to the timecode in the window to the left. Or, you can enter a timecode in the timecode display window to the left, then click <b>Cue Out</b> . The Position Bar jumps to this point.
Repla	ice	Replaces the selected clip in the timeline with one that you mark. For example, you can click on a clip on the timeline so that it is selected, adjust the in or out point of the clip, then click <b>Replace</b> . The new version of the clip replaces the original one on the timeline.
		This is different in the 1.2 version, in which the changes to the in and out points are applied to the clip on the timeline as they are marked.
		You can also use the <b>Replace</b> button in conjunction with a source's <b>Duration</b> timecode to trim an event on the timeline. When you click on an event on the timeline, the <b>Source Type</b> button under the active left monitor changes to match the event type: <b>Source A</b> (or B or C) for a linear clip, <b>Clip</b> for a digitized clip, <b>Frame</b> for a framestore, etc. You can type in the duration you want for the event in the <b>Duration</b> timecode box under the left monitor and click the <b>Replace</b> button. The new version of the event, of the duration you specified, replaces the previous one on the timeline. This method is convenient when you want to trim an event to a precise length.

GlobeCa

under Global Settings) as they are marked. Mark the in point of the clip, then the out point, and it appears in the designated bin. Then click the New **Clip** button before logging your next clip. (For information on how to use the Global Settings panel, see the "Using Configure Panels" chapter in

Control the selected device. The buttons, in order

Puts deck in Pause mode, pausing playback if the deck is rolling, or spooling the tape so it is ready to

the GlobeCaster User Guide.)

Moves back five frames at a time

Moves back one frame at a time

Moves ahead one frame at a time

Moves ahead five frames at a time

One click stops the current source; two clicks

play if the deck is stopped **Jog Forward 1 Frame** 

**Jog Forward 5 Frames** 

Jog Back 1 Frame

from left to right, are:

Rewind Rewinds **Reverse Play** Plays in reverse **Jog Back 5 Frames** 

Pause

Play

Stop

.

Plays normally **Fast Forward** Fast forwards

despools the tape

AutoSave

**Right Monitor** 

Transport

Controls





ster	

ter	

Automatically saves clips in the default clips bin (set

Chapter 3 64

Time Machine Recorder Panel The Time Machine Recorder Panel allows you to record an input directly into the Time Machine.



Figure 3.27: Time Machine Recorder Panel

Here is how the buttons work:

Source Button	Allows you to return to the <b>Timeline</b> , <b>Recorder</b> , or <b>Off</b> mode.
Timecode Window	Provides an estimate of how much time has been recorded.
New Clip Button	Creates a new clip.
Input Button	Allows you to select which input source is recorded.
Ch 1/2	Allows you to choose which physical audio input to record.
<b>Record Button</b>	Allows you to record.
Stop Button	Allows you to stop recording. When you stop recording, the picon of the recorded clip is placed in the <b>Clip Controls</b> on the main tool panel. You can drag-and-drop the picon into any bin, save it to the clips directory, or click on the properties to check its properties.
Insert Video, A1 & A2	Allows you to select which component is recorded.



# **Left Monitor Controls** The left monitors display input sources, whether tapes in your source decks, digitized clips (if Time Machine is installed), framestores, matte color, or black. The controls for the left monitor change depending on which of the six editing modes is selected. This section describes the controls for Add Clip mode, the default editing mode. This mode functions similar to the GlobeCaster Editor 1.2 version, and is used for logging clips and building timelines.

The advanced editing modes, Trim Clip, Trim Edit, Slip Source, Slide, and Transition Edit, are used for fine-tuning and precision editing. For information on the monitor controls in the advanced editing modes and how to use these editing modes, see "Using Advanced Editing Modes" on page 124.

Figure 3.28 shows what the left monitor controls look like in Add Clip mode with a digitized clip selected as the source.



Figure 3.28: The Left Monitor Controls in Add Clip Mode

Here's how the left monitor control buttons work in Add Clip mode:

Source Type Button Right-click on the **Source Type** button under one of the left monitors.

(Source A, Source B, Source C, Clip, Frame, Matte, Black)



Figure 3.29: Clicking on the Source Type Button Under the Left Monitor

A pop-up menu appears (Figure 3.30).



Source A - DVIO3 (in slot 3) [Reel1] Clip Frame Matte Black Live
✓ Details ✓ Always show Original Source In & Out

Figure 3.30: The Monitor Source Type Pop-Up Menu

Source A	Select this item for a deck source.
Clip	Select this item for a Time Machine clip.
Frame	Select this item for a Framestore.
Matte	Select this item for a Matte.
Black	Select this item for Matte Black.
Live	Select this item for a live source.
Details	Toggles the detailed deck information off or on.
Always show Original Source In & Out	Used with a Time Machine clip. Although a Time Machine clip has an in-point of 0 and an end- point that corresponds to the duration of the clip, the footage it represents may start in the middle of the source tape. At certain points, it may be more convenient to use the Time Machine Clip's in and out points, while at other times it may be more helpful to use the original source's in and out points. Selecting this menu item toggles between the two options.
Timecode	Displays current timecode of the selected source.
Shuttle Slider, Lock Button	Used just like a shuttle control on a deck. The further the slider is pulled from the center, the faster the tape travels. Tapes can be shuttled backward or forward. If the <b>Lock</b> button is on, the slider snaps back to center (and pauses the tape) when you stop dragging it. You can also use the slider in the Main Controls to shuttle the active source



Mark In/ Used for logging clips. As a source (tape or Mark Out digitized file) is played, clicking Mark In logs the in point, and clicking Mark Out logs the out point. When using a tape as the source, the tape must be named before these buttons function (see "Tape Name" on page 47 for instructions on how to name tapes). When you click Mark In, a picon of the first frame appears in the Current Clip picon in the toolbar (Figure 3.31).

Properties	Lift	Undo
	Extract	Redo
DU W	Split	Only Disk
sample01	Merge	Use Freeze
Save	Digitize	Batch

Figure 3.31: The Current Clip Picon

Displays the in and out points of a selected item. Mark the in and out points of a clip by cueing to the desired point and clicking the Mark In, Mark Out buttons. Or, you can enter the desired timecode here and press the Enter button on your keyboard to set the in and out points.

In Point/Out **Point Timecode** 



Duration

Displays the length of the selected source in timecode. Type in a timecode and press **Enter** on your keyboard to change the duration.

For framestores, matte color, and black, you can set a default length. To do this, right-click on the **Duration** timecode box. A pop-up menu appears.

	Framestore	
Frame	00:00:00:00	Lock
44 4 45		
Mark In	::	Cue In
Mark Out	il	Cue Out
Save as defa	ult value	
Reset to def	ault value	
Save as min	imum effect lenat	h

Figure 3.32: The Duration Box Pop-Up Menu

Choose Save as default value to set the default length for framestores, matte color, and black. Choose Reset to default value to change a duration you modified back to the default. Choose Save as minimum effect length to specify the default length of a loaded effect in a timeline. This only applies to variable length effects. Cue In Shuttles the source to the position shown in the In Point timecode box. **Cue Out** Shuttles the source to the position shown in the Out Point timecode box. -/+ Increases or decreases the length of the source by 1 second.


Left Monitor Transport Controls Control the selected device. The buttons, in order from left to right, are:

•	

### Rewind

Rewinds



Plays in reverse

**Jog Back 5 Frames** 

Jog Back 1 Frame

**Reverse Play** 

Ш

## Pause

Puts deck in Pause mode, pausing playback if the deck is rolling, or spooling the tape so it is ready to play if the deck is stopped



Moves ahead one frame at a time

Moves back five frames at a time

Moves back one frame at a time



Moves ahead five frames at a time

**Jog Forward 5 Frames** 

# Play

Plays normally

Fast Forward

Fast forwards

# Stop

One click stops the current source; two clicks despools the tape

70 )))) Chapter 3

# Working With Clips

Settings affecting clips can be adjusted using the Clip Controls, the **Clip Main Properties** panel, and the **Color Correction** panel. This section explains how to access and use these functions.

**Clip Controls** The Clip Controls are the green buttons (yellow when they are turned on) on the left side of the toolbar. They are used to save clips, move them on the timeline, digitize them, and open other panels for working with clips.

Properties	Lift	Undo
sample01,	Extract	Redo
	Split	Only Disk
	Merge	Use Freeze
Save	Digitize	Batch

Figure 3.33: The Clip Controls

Here's what these buttons do:

**Properties** Brings up the **Clip Main Properties** panel, where you can set basic properties of the clip, such as play speed, which audio and video channels are recorded, and color correction. See "Clip Main Properties Panel" on page 75 for information on how to use this panel.

Editor Manual

GlobeCaster ((( 71



Current Clip Picon	The picon of the currently selected clip. When a clip is first generated, the first frame of the clip is turned into a picon to represent the clip. This picon can be dragged into a bin or dropped right onto the timeline. By right-clicking on the Current Clip Picon, you can choose a new frame to represent this clip by selecting <b>Set</b> <b>Picon</b> from the pop-up menu. You can also rename or delete the clip from this pop-up menu. See the next section, "Current Clip Picon Pop-Up Menu," for information on how to do this.
	The picon can be used for other sources as well: Framestores, ClipMems, etc. You can select a source and then use the picon to drag-and-drop a copy of the source onto the timeline in a different location, or copy over an existing source.
	Furthermore, you can select an effect and its picon will be shown. You can drag-and-drop a copy of the effect onto the timeline in a different location, or copy over an existing effect. Additionally, you can drag-and-drop the effect picon into a bin and save the current properties as a .lfx (linear effect) file. Note that this does not create a copy of the effect file; only a reference to the effect and the properties associated with it are saved.
Save	Saves the current clip in the GlobeCaster\Bins\Clips directory, or whatever directory you set in the Global Settings panel. For information on how to use the Global Settings panel, see the "Using Configure Panels" chapter in the GlobeCaster User Guide.
Lift	Removes the selected clip from the timeline, leaving a space.
Extract	Removes the selected clip and closes the gap in the timeline where the clip was.
Split	Splits the selected clip or still at the Position Bar. Same as <b>Split at PosBar</b> on the timeline pop-up menu, or <b>Control</b> + <b>s</b> on the keyboard. <i>TIP</i> : You can use <b>Control</b> + <b>s</b> to split clips and stills as the timeline plays back.

72 )))) Chapter 3

	Merge	If two clips are from the same source tape and have contiguous timecode (as the halves of a split clip would), this merges the clips back together. To use this, click on the first clip to select it, then click on the <b>Merge</b> button.
	Digitize	Digitizes selected clips (if Time Machine is installed). Each clip has a default of 1 second of trim room at the head and tail of the clip. Digitized clips are shown as dark blue on the timeline. They are saved on the Time Machine hard drives. You can create shortcut picons for Time Machine clips and save them in any bin by dragging the clip picon into the bin.
	Undo	Undoes any timeline change and most <b>Clip</b> <b>Properties</b> panel changes, in reverse sequence.
	Redo	Redoes undone timeline changes and most <b>Clip</b> <b>Properties</b> panel changes, in reverse sequence.
	Only Disk, Use Freeze	<b>Only Disk</b> limits the extension of a digitized clip to the length of the 1-second trim room at each end of the clip. In other words, it cannot extend past the information saved to disk. If this is turned off, the clip can be extended beyond the trim room. However, the clips must then be re-digitized from its original source tape.
		<b>Use Freeze</b> allows a digitized clip to be extended beyond the trim room by using a freeze-frame of the first or last frame to fill the extra time.
	Batch	Opens the <b>Batch Digitize</b> window, where you can select settings for individual clips and digitize selected clips in a batch. See "Digitizing With Time Machine" on page 138 for information on how to do this.
Current Clip	The Current Cli	p Picon pop-up menu has options that allow you to rena

Picon Pop-Up Menu The Current Clip Picon pop-up menu has options that allow you to rename or delete a clip, create a new picon to represent the clip, or open the **Clip Main Properties** panel.



To access the panel, right-click on the Current Clip picon in the Clip Controls.



Figure 3.34: The Current Clip Picon Pop-Up Menu

The pop-up menu has the following options:

Properties	Brings up the <b>Clip Main Properties</b> panel, where you can set basic properties of the clip, such as play speed, which audio and video channels are recorded, and color correction. See the following section for information on how to use this panel.
Rename	Allows you to assign a new name to the selected clip. Once you select this option from the pop-up menu, a cursor appears at the end of the name of the clip on the Current Clip picon. You can add to the existing name, or you can use the backspace delete key to delete the existing name and type in a new one. Up to two lines of a clip name are displayed at a time.
	As with any file, you can also rename clips by right- clicking on the picon in the bin and selecting <b>Rename</b> from the pop-up menu, but be careful not to delete the file name extension.
	<i>NOTE</i> : File names starting with an underscore (_) are hidden names and are not displayed on the picon in the bin.
Delete	Deletes the selected clip.
Set Picon	Creates a new picon to represent the clip. If your GlobeCaster has a ClipGrab card, the new picon is taken from the active monitor on the interface, giving you flexibility to choose the image. If you do not have a ClipGrab card, the frame displayed on the Program monitor when this button is clicked is the new image for the picon.
	If an event is selected on the timeline, its picon is also updated.

74 )))) Chapter 3

Record to hard drive

This option appears if the clip is a linear clip. It creates a ClipMem, a bit of digitized video recorded to the RAM on the Warp Engine card and stored on the PC hard drive. This is useful if you do not have a Time Machine. It allows you to store a short clip of uncompressed digitized video and then use it for rotoscoping, animation, transitions between clips on the same source tape, etc. The amount of video storage you have depends on the amount of RAM on your Warp Engine. With 128 MB of RAM (the maximum) you can record just over 6 seconds of video. The standard 16 MB of RAM records 20 frames, or 2/3 of a second. If the clip you want to record to the hard drive is longer than the capacity of the RAM, the GlobeCaster Editor creates multiple ClipMems.

This option is the same as the **Record to Harddrive** option on the Timeline pop-up menu (see "Timeline Event Pop-Up Menu" on page 99).



Clip Main Properties Panel The **Clip Main Properties** panel is where you set the basic properties of a clip, such as play speed, which audio and video channels are recorded, and color correction. Access the panel by clicking on the **Clip Props** button in the Clip Controls, or by right-clicking on a clip on the timeline or the Current Clip picon and choosing **Properties** from the pop-up menu.

	Clip Main Proper	ties
Panel Button	Reel	External Source
	Clip Name	
		V A1 A2 A3 A4
	Audio Edit Lock	In Out
		Normal 1.00
	Loop Count	
	Compression Ratio	N/A
	Video Run Field I	Freeze Frame Strobe
	Tape Color Correct	tion Setup Use
	NLR Color Correcti	on Setup Use
	Use tape	e default correction
		be default correction
	Correct a	Il clips on this tape

Figure 3.35: The Clip Main Properties Panel

Here's how to use the panel:

Panel Button	Click on this to bring up a pop-up menu. You can	
	Clin Andia Properties to even that would East	
	Cup Audio Properties to open that panel. For	
	information on the <b>Clip Audio Properties</b> panel, see	
	"Clip Audio Properties" on page 164.	
Reel	Lists the name of the tape that the clip was recorded from.	

76	))))	Chapter 3
----	------	-----------

Record	Sets which channels of the clip are recorded. Only <b>V</b> affects what appears in the timeline. To create an audio-only clip, turn off the <b>V</b> (video) button. To see the audio tracks, click on the + next to the name of the video track to the left of the timeline. To disable audio for the clip, turn off the <b>A1</b> and <b>A2</b> buttons (and <b>A3</b> and <b>A4</b> if applicable). This also turns them off on the Clip Audio Properties panel (see "Clip Audio Properties" on page 164 for information on this panel). Once the video is turned off, to turn it back on right-click on the audio clip on the timeline and select <b>Properties</b> to open the <b>Clip Main Properties</b> panel.
Audio Edit Lock	Locks or unlocks the audio track with the video. Turning this off allows you to move the audio independently of the video in order to do split audio edits. To see the audio tracks, click on the + next to the name of the video track to the left of the timeline. When the <b>Audio Edit Lock</b> buttons are off, you see grab bars on the ends of the audio clips on the timeline. You can unlock either the beginning ( <b>In</b> ) or end ( <b>Out</b> ) of an audio track, or both. Turning these buttons off also turns the channel buttons off on the <b>Clip Audio Properties</b> panel (see "Clip Audio Properties" on page 164 for information on how to use this panel).
Play Speed	Adjusts the playback speed and direction for non- linear clips. Clicking on the button brings up a pop- up menu with the following options: <b>8x Rev</b> (Reverse), <b>4x Rev, 2x Rev, Reverse, Half Rev,</b> <b>Quarter Rev, Quarter Fwd</b> (Forward), <b>Half Fwd,</b> <b>Normal, 2x Fwd, 4x Fwd, 8x Fwd</b> .
Loop Count	An easy way to repeat a non-linear clip over and over. Enter the number of loops you want, and the clip automatically loops that many times. The new duration is automatically reflected in the length of the clip on the timeline.
Rate	Sets the strobe rate for a clip, either linear or non- linear (see <b>Strobe</b> below).
Compression Ratio	Displays the compression level used for Time Machine clips. This is the relative compression setting ( <b>Default, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5,</b> or <b>6</b> ) selected when the clip was digitized. For more information on compression levels, see "Digitizing With Time Machine" on page 138.
Run	Default setting, which plays the clip normally.



Freeze	Freezes the first frame of a clip and holds it for the duration of the clip.
Strobe	Stutter-steps the clip as if a strobe light was going off. The rate can be set in the <b>Rate</b> window (see above).
Setup	When a clip is selected, clicking on this brings up the <b>Color Correction</b> panel, where you can correct color problems in the clip or create special color effects. Changes you make are saved for this clip when you close the panel. See the following section for information on how to use this panel.
Use Tape Default	Resets color correction settings to the default settings. Use this if you tried to adjust the color for a clip but decide the default color looked better.
Set as Tape Default	Applies current color correction settings to all clips <i>subsequently</i> made from a given tape.
Copy to all clips from same tape	Applies current color correction settings to <i>all</i> clips (both those already made and those made subsequently) from a given tape.

Color Correction Panel This panel is used to correct for inconsistencies in the colors of your inputs. If videotape on input 3 looks too dark, this is the place to correct it. Color correction settings can also be used to create all kinds of special effects, such as posterization and solarization.

To access the **Color Correction** panel, click on the **Setup** button on the **Clip Main Properties** panel, or click on the **Configure** button in either the GlobeCaster

# 78 )))) Chapter 3

Switcher or the GlobeCaster Editor programs and select **Color Correction** from the pop-up menu.

Color Correc	tion Revert X	
Input: 2	Reset	Color Picon
Hue Sat Luma Setup White Hue White Mag Black Hue Black Mag	0.0 ° 100.0 % 100.0 % 0.0 ° 0.0 ° 0.0 ° 0.0 %	
	Limit Low Luma	

Figure 3.36: Color Correction Panel

To save the values you set as the default settings, close the panel. The settings are automatically saved.

To save the values as a separate file to be used on a special-case basis, drag the color picon to a bin and save it. The values can then be called up by dragging the picon onto an input module number (1-8) on one of the busses in the Switcher. Or, you can open the **Color Correction** panel, select the input module number you want, and then drag the picon from the bin back onto the color picon on the panel.

To get rid of the changes you made, click on the **Reset** button. The values return to the original defaults. Or, click on the **Revert** button. The values revert to the last settings you saved.

Here's how to use the settings:

Input	Indicates the number of the input source being adjusted. Each input can be adjusted independently. To select another input to adjust, click on the box with the number and select the input number you want.
Reset	Resets values to the original defaults.
Revert	Resets values to the last settings you saved.



Color Picon	The square to the right of the <b>Reset</b> button is the <b>Color Picon</b> . You can drag-and-drop this picon into a bin to save color correction settings. This makes it easy to apply the same settings to multiple inputs. To load the saved settings into an input, drag the picon onto an input module number (1-8) on one of the busses in Switcher. Or, you can open up the <b>Color Correction</b> panel for the desired input, drag the picon from the bin, and drop it on the <b>Color Picon</b> window.
Hue	Changes the color values of the video input. If images have an unwanted color, or hue, adjust the <b>Hue</b> value to compensate for it.
Sat (Saturation)	Increases or decreases the amount of color, or saturation, in the picture. If the colors seem too vivid, lower the <b>Saturation</b> value. If the colors are washed out, increase the <b>Saturation</b> value.
Luma	Controls the contrast of the picture. To make the picture look crisper, increase the <b>Luma</b> value. In the broadcast industry, this is often referred to as gain.
Setup	Controls the brightness of the picture. In the broadcast industry, this is also called pedestal.
White Hue, White Mag	White Hue and White Mag (Magnitude) adjust the color of the whitest parts of the signal. You may run across a piece of video that has whites that don't look white. If you see something on a tape that should be white but has a red or green tinge, the camera was not properly white balanced when the video was shot. White Hue defines the color added to the white parts of the signal, adjustable by using the colored slider, and White Mag determines how much color is added. To remove a color from the white parts of the image, set White Hue to the opposite color, and adjust White Mag to the appropriate level to cancel out the offending color.
Black Hue, Black Mag	If the black areas of the video have an unwanted tint, the <b>Black Hue</b> and <b>Black Mag</b> (Magnitude) settings can correct this. They operate the same way as White Hue and White Mag. <b>Black Hue</b> defines the color added to the black parts of the image, adjustable by using the colored slider. <b>Black Mag</b> sets the level of the color added. If the black areas of the video have a green tinge, try adding a little red.

Sometimes adjusting these values can result in a color signal that is too hot or too low for the average transmitter to transmit, or the average television to display properly. When this happens, we refer to the video signal as being illegal. To

# 80 )))) Chapter 3

prevent this from happening, the bottom of the panel contains three buttons that limit the video signal. Each one, when turned on, acts as a video police officer and makes sure values are within CCIR-601 specifications.

Limit High Luma	Limits the upper end of the luma value to prevent the whites from being illegal values.
Limit Low Luma	Limits the lower end of the luma value to prevent the blacks from being illegal values.
Limit Chroma	Limits the color signals, keeping them within legal values.



# Working With Timelines

The GlobeCaster Editor timeline is where you put together all the pieces of your project. When building timelines, you choose settings that affect how clips on the timeline behave by using the **Timeline Controls** buttons, the **Timeline Properties** panel, the **Editor Options** panel, and pop-up menus that appear when you right-click on various parts of the timeline. You can use the GlobeCaster Editor's clip priority rules to quickly perform some types of edits. You can also append a timeline to one that is already loaded.

This section of the chapter covers the following topics:

- Parts of the timeline
- Selecting clips on the timeline
- Using clip priority
- Appending a timeline
- Functions of buttons, panels, and pop-up menus



Figure 3.37: The GlobeCaster Editor Timeline

Following is an explanation of how the parts of the timeline work:

```
Timecode
                  When you start a new timeline, you see two
                  timecode numbers at the top of the timeline, one at
                  each end. These represent the points on the master
                  tape where the GlobeCaster Editor will lay down
                  the timeline. To set the timecode for the beginning
                  of the timeline, click on the Options button on the
                  right side of the screen to open the Editor Options
                  panel. Next to Timeline Starts At, type in the
                  timecode you want. Or, click Mark, and the current
                  timecode on your record tape is imported. As the
                  Position Bar moves through the timeline, the
                  timecode for its location is displayed. Timecode is
                  also displayed when you click on an event to move
                  it on the timeline. Beginning and ending timecode
                  are both displayed for the event, unless the event is
                  of such a short duration that there is not room for
                  both to be displayed. In that case, only the
                  beginning timecode is displayed.
                  The red bar at the top of the timeline. Parts of the
Validation Bar
                  bar turn green as edits have been recorded to the
                  master tape. If you add elements to the timeline
                  after recording to the master, the bar above these
                  elements is red. The next time you click on
                  Assemble, the GlobeCaster Editor adds the changed
                  sections of the timeline to the master (see
                   "Assemble" on page 55 for information on how to
                  use the Assemble function).
```

Editor Manual

GlobeCaster

Tree	Expands or shrinks the display of tracks on the timeline. Clicking on a plus sign displays that track's child track(s), and clicking on a minus sign hides that track and its child tracks.		
Position Bar	The vertical black bar on the timeline depicts the position on the timeline of the output you are seeing. You can scrub through the timeline by dragging the position bar through it, or you can skip to a part of the timeline by dragging the position bar there. The timecode of the position bar's location is displayed above it. You can quickly place this bar anywhere on the timeline by clicking in the spot where you would like it to appear. While scrubbing through a clip, you can stop the playback and freeze the position of the Position Bar by pressing the space bar on your keyboard. (When Timeline is the active source, the space bar toggles between <b>Play</b> and <b>Stop</b> .) You can fine tune the location of the Position Bar by using the left and right arrow keys on your keyboard. This is handy for marking the spot where you want to trim or split a clip, start or end a transition, start or end an audio track, etc.		
Tracks	A track on the timeline represents a chronological sequence of events. Multiple tracks make it possible to switch between images and effects. A timeline can have up to 13 tracks:		
	• Three video tracks: Video 1, Video 2, Video 3		
	• Transition/warp effect track: <b>FX</b>		
	• Up to four downstream key tracks: DSK, DSK2, DSK3, DSK4. Each video track also has child Audio tracks, which in turn have child Levels tracks. Split audio edits can be performed in the Audio tracks, and audio levels are controlled in the Levels tracks. (You must first animate audio levels before changing them in the Levels tracks. For information on how to do this, see "Animating Audio On The Timeline" on page 155.)		
	• Up to four GPI tracks: GPI 1, GPI 2, GPI 3, GPI 4 for activating GPI triggers		
	<ul> <li>Pause track, for pausing the timeline.</li> </ul>		
Events	Video clips, audio clips, and effects that are placed on the timeline.		

<b>84</b> )))) Chapter 3		
	Scroom Bar	Scrolls and zooms the timeline. To scroll the timeline left or right, click on the Scroom bar and drag left or right. To zoom the timeline in and out, click on the Scroom bar and drag up or down. To do both at once, click on the Scroom bar and drag diagonally. You can also zoom by right-clicking on the timeline and selecting a zoom setting from the pop-up menu.
	Vertical Scroll Bar	Scrolls the timeline up and down. Click on the bar and drag it up or down.
	Duration Timecode	Displays the length of the selected event.
Selecting Clips On The Timeline	Before performin properties, or usi on the timeline t	g a number of operations, such as digitizing clips, changing clip ng the <b>Preview</b> or <b>Perform</b> functions, you need to select the clips hat you want to affect with that action.
	You can select mu and clicking on t choose one of the <b>Here,</b> etc. (see "T options).	ultiple events by holding down the <b>Control</b> key on your keyboard he events, or you can right-click on an event in the timeline and e selection options, such as <b>Select All, Select Track, Select From</b> Fimeline Event Pop-Up Menu" on page 99 for all of the selection
Using Clip Priority	Priority of clips c The general rule other words, if th highest track is p	on the timeline is a powerful way to control which source appears. for priority of the video tracks is the top track gets priority. In here is more than one clip at a point in the timeline, the clip in the blayed.
	Here are the spec	rific priority rules:
	• If there is no	clip, the GlobeCaster Editor plays black.
	• If there is on	e clip, the GlobeCaster Editor plays that clip.
	• If there are ty	wo or more clips that overlap, plays the one on the highest track.
	As the timeline p "drops down" to clip begins again creating a cut.	lays through, if the clip on top runs out, the GlobeCaster Editor the clip on the next highest track. This is in effect a cut edit. If a on a higher track, GlobeCaster "jumps up" to that clip, also
	If the clip on the (overlapped on b clip, and the higl way to perform a bottom clip cont	higher track is shorter than the clip on the lower track both sides), then the GlobeCaster Editor begins with the lower her, shorter clip is seen as an insert or cut-away. This is a quick in L-cut (also called a split audio edit), where the audio for the inues as the video cuts to the upper clip and then back.
	Occasionally it's c priority, so the G To do this, right- menu. This tells even if there are have <b>Higher Prio</b> track plays throu	inconvenient to move a clip from track to track just to change its lobeCaster Editor provides a handy way to break the priority rule. click on a clip and choose <b>Higher Priority</b> from the pop-up the GlobeCaster Editor to play the entire clip from start to finish, clips on the higher priority tracks. If two clips overlap and both <b>prity</b> turned on, then the old rule applies: the clip on the higher ghout.



Where two clips overlap, you can cut back and forth between them by adding "fake dissolves." If you have overlapping clips on the **Video 1** and **Video 2** tracks, for example, you can create dissolves and set them to go from the **Video 2** track to the same **Video 2** track. Because the dissolve is from and to the same video source, it simply plays that source. This way, the GlobeCaster Editor plays the video on the **Video 1** track until it comes to the dissolve. Then it plays the clip on the **Video 2** track for the length of the dissolve, after which it goes back to the clip on the **Video 1** track.

To use dissolves to cut between overlapping video sources, do the following:

1. Right-click on the overlapping area of one of the clips and choose **Create Dissolve** from the pop-up menu.



A dissolve appears in the FX track (Figure 3.38).

Figure 3.38: Timeline with Dissolve in the FX Track

- 2. Adjust the dissolve to the duration you want the clip on the **Video 2** track to play.
- 3. Repeat this until you have all your dissolves in place (Figure 3.39).



Figure 3.39: Timeline with Dissolves

4. Right-click on the first dissolve and choose **Effect Properties** from the pop-up menu.



The **Effect Properties** panel appears in the upper left of your screen (Figure 3.40).

Effect Prope	ties
	From Video 1 To Video 2
Comp FX Ke	iled transition y
Fade In Duration	0 Fade Out 0
Revers Surface W	ed [Loop While Paused]
	E 1 Flip Vertically
Borde	nt Conn

Figure 3.40: The Effect Properties Panel

5. Click on the video track button (it says **Video 1**) next to **From** at the top of the panel (Figure 3.41).

Effect Propert		N.
Effect Info	From Video 1	To Video 2

Figure 3.41: The Video Track Button

A pop-up menu appears. Use this menu to select which track the dissolve starts from.



6. Choose **Video 2** from the pop-up menu.



Figure 3.42: Choosing the Video 2 Track

7. Click on the Video Track button next to **To** and choose **Video 2** from the popup menu.

The dissolve on the timeline has the numbers **2>2** on it, indicating the dissolve goes from the **Video 2** track to the **Video 2** track.

- 8. With the **Effect Properties** panel still open, click on the next dissolve on the timeline to select it.
- 9. Set From and To to the Video 2 track.

Your timeline now has two overlapping clips with a series of dissolves set from the **Video 2** track to the **Video 2** track (Figure 3.43).



Figure 3.43: 2>2 Dissolves on the Timeline

That's it, you have set up the dissolves so they will act as cuts between the two clips. The GlobeCaster Editor will play the clip in the **Video 1** track, except where the dissolves are, where it will play the clip in the **Video 2** track.

If you have a timeline loaded in the GlobeCaster Editor, you can append another timeline to it. This feature is convenient if you are creating a lengthy project.

To append a timeline, do the following:

- 1. Load the first timeline by double-clicking on its picon or dragging the picon to the timeline.
- 2. Click in a blank area of the bin to deselect the picon for the first timeline.
- 3. Click on the picon for the second timeline so that it is selected (yellow).
- 4. Holding down the **Control** key on your keyboard, drag the picon for the second timeline to the timeline area on the interface. When the Position Bar is where you want the second timeline to begin, release the mouse button.

### Appending A Timeline

**TIP:** To speed the time it takes to navigate around the timeline, you can cut a large project into smaller sections, then paste all the timelines together when you're ready to record the project.



**TIP:** Be sure to release the mouse button, wait for the appended timeline to appear, then release the **Control** button. Watch for the appended timeline to appear *before* releasing the **Control** button.



Figure 3.44: Dragging the Second Timeline Picon to the Timeline

The second timeline appears, beginning where the Position Bar was located when you released the mouse button.



Figure 3.45: The Second Timeline is Appended after the Position Bar

The timeline begins at the point where the Position Bar was when you released the mouse button. You can place the Position Bar in the midst of the first timeline. If you do this, the second timeline will overwrite the remainder of the first timeline.

### Timeline Controls

You can use the Timeline Controls to save a timeline, select one of six edit modes, open additional monitors, or set special properties for the timeline. These controls are the blue buttons (yellow when they are turned on) on the left side of the toolbar.



Figure 3.46: The Timeline Controls

Here's what these buttons do:

TimelineOpens the Timeline Properties panel, where you<br/>can record information about your timelines. See<br/>"Timeline Properties Panel" on page 92 for<br/>information on how to use this panel.

Editor Manual



Timeline Picon	This picon represents the entire timeline. The picon can be dragged and dropped into a bin to save your project. When Editor is busy loading events on the timeline, you see a horizontal status bar go up and down on this picon. Right-clicking on the picon brings up the Timeline Picon Pop-Up Menu, where you can rename the timeline, create picons for it, or open the Timeline Properties Panel. See the following section for information on how to use the Timeline Picon Pop-Up Menu.
Save	Saves the timeline in the Bins\Clips\Projects directory, or whatever default path you set in the <b>Global Settings</b> panel. For information on how to use the <b>Global Settings</b> panel, see the "Using Configure Panels" chapter of the <i>GlobeCaster User</i> <i>Guide</i> .
Trim Clip	An editing mode for trimming single clips that displays the first frame of the selected clip in the left monitor, and the last frame of the clip in the right monitor. The controls trim or add time to the beginning or end of the clip. See "Trim Clip Mode" on page 127 for information on this editing mode.
Trim Edit	An editing mode for adjusting edits between two clips. This is useful for precision editing down to individual frames. You can trim time off or add to the clips. See "Trim Edit Mode" on page 129 for information on this editing mode.
Slip Src (Source)	An editing mode used to adjust the in and out points of a clip without changing its duration or position on the timeline. It "slips" the video forward or backward, in effect trimming one end and extending the other simultaneously. This is useful, for example, if you finish building a timeline but decide you wish one clip started a few frames earlier. See "Slip Source Mode" on page 131 for information on this editing mode.
Slide	An editing mode that locks the selected clips into a single series. You can then adjust the in and out points of the entire series. This mode is similar to Slip Source, except the overall length of the series <i>changes</i> as you adjust the in and out points of the series. See "Slide Mode" on page 132 for information on this editing mode.

90 🌒

	New	Clears the timeline and starts a new one. If you have unsaved changes in the currently loaded timeline, the GlobeCaster Editor asks whether you want to save them before opening a new one.
	2, 3, 4	Selects two-, three-, or four-monitor display.
	Add Clip	The default editing mode. Used when logging clips or adding clips to a timeline project. The right monitor displays the timeline or record deck, and the left monitor displays the selected input source.
	Trans (Transition) Edit	An editing mode used to adjust the beginning and ending of transitions. Adjustable transitions, such as wipes and dissolves, automatically adjust in length to match the overlap of the two clips. When the GlobeCaster Editor is in Trans Edit mode, it automatically goes to a four-monitor display. See "Transition Edit Mode" on page 133 for information on this editing mode.
	View	A single-monitor mode. This larger monitor is useful for viewing the final output. To exit this mode, click on the edit mode you wish to return to ( <b>Add Clip</b> is the default).
	Ripple	When this is on, the GlobeCaster Editor automatically shifts the elements of a timeline to compensate for any changes you make. If you insert a clip, for example, clips farther down the timeline shift over to make room for the new clip.
Timeline Picon Pop-Up Menu	The Timeline Pic open the <b>Timeli</b> i	con pop-up menu allows you to manage picons for your timelines, <b>he Properties</b> panel (see "Timeline Properties Panel" on page 92)

open the **Timeline Properties** panel (see "Timeline Properties Panel" on page 92), or save the timeline information as a text edit decision list (EDL).

To access it, right-click on the timeline picon in the Timeline Controls.

Picon	Timeline	Trim Clip	234
		Trim Edit	Add Clip
		Slip Src	Trans Edit
		Slide	View
	Save	New	Ripple

Figure 3.47: Right-Clicking on the Timeline Picon



The Timeline Picon pop-up menu appears (Figure 3.48).



Figure 3.48: The Timeline Picon Pop-Up Menu

The pop-up menu has the following options:

Properties	Brings up the <b>Timeline Properties</b> panel, where you can record information about your timelines (see following section).
Rename	Allows you to assign a new name for the timeline. To do so, select <b>Rename</b> from the pop-up menu. Then type in the name for the timeline. It is displayed on the timeline picon on the toolbar (Figure 3.49). Changing the name on the timeline picon does not change the name of the timeline already saved in the bin, but if you drag the timeline picon from the toolbar to the bin, a new copy appears in the bin with the new name.
	Timeline Trim Clip 2 3 4 Picon Trim Edit Add Clip

rimeline	Timeane	Thin Cip	2 3 4
Picon —		Trim Edit	Add Clip
		Slip Src	Trans Edit
	Giobecas	Slide	View
Name	Save	New	Ripple
i tunio			

Figure 3.49: Naming a Timeline

As with any file, you can also rename timelines by right-clicking on the picon in the bin and selecting Rename from the pop-up menu, but be careful not to delete the file name extension (.ptl).

Set PiconCreates a new picon for the timeline, using whatever<br/>image is on your Program monitor screen.Reset Timeline<br/>PiconResets the timeline picon back to the default for<br/>timelines that have had a picon set on them.New ProjectClears the current timeline and allows you to start a<br/>new project.

92 )))) Chapter 3

Make all picons	If you build a timeline in the GlobeCaster Switcher, this creates picons for all the clips.
Save Text EDL (Edit Decision List)	Changes the format in which the timeline is saved. When this is selected, dragging the picon into a bin saves a CMX 3600 text EDL. Any CMX editor can then use this edit decision list.
Play in Loop	Plays the timeline in a loop, returning to the beginning and playing it through again each time it reaches the end.

Timeline<br/>Properties<br/>PanelThe Timeline Properties<br/>panel provides a place to record information about your<br/>timelines. Access it by clicking on the Timeline button or right-clicking on the<br/>Timeline Picon and choosing Properties.

	Timeline Properties	X
Display Window	Project Date Editor	
	Name Date Value July 3, 2001 Delete	

Figure 3.50: The Timeline Properties Panel

Here's how to use the panel:

Display Window	Displays the names of properties you created. To view information about a property, click on it in this window to select it. A check mark appears next to it, and the information is displayed in the <b>Value</b> window.
Name	Type in the name of properties you would like to record information about, such as name of the project, date, number of source tapes, etc. Then press <b>Enter</b> on the keyboard.
Value	Type in the information for the properties you created, then press <b>Enter</b> on the keyboard.
Delete	Deletes the selected property.

GlobeCaster

#### **Editor Options Panel** In the **Editor Options** panel, you can choose settings related to editing on the GlobeCaster Editor timeline. The settings affect the way clips on the timeline behave, how the GlobeCaster Editor assembles clips, and how your decks behave.

To access the panel, click on the gray **Options** button on the right side of the toolbar. The **Editor Options** panel appears in the upper left corner of the screen.

Editor Options		X
Drag Clips 🚺	love	Roll
Edits Lock Trans Tri	m Clip	Slide Edit
Auto Beats Foll	ow Rec	Tape Scrub
Audio Scrub Length	2 Arc	ound pos bar
Load Files To Sou	rce 🚺 S	ingle Click
Preview Mo		VVV
Auto-Assemble Meth	od Ch	neckerboard
Timeline starts	00:00:0	0 Mark
Reset	imeline I	for assembly
Rem	ove Unu	sed Tapes
Load	Timeline	on Scrub
Unload TL Load 1	imeline	from PosBar
Reac		ies 0
Postroll	00:	00:02:00
Max Safe Preroll	00:	00:30:00
Abort edits if off b	y more t	han 0
Aborted		ries 5

Figure 3.51: The Editor Options Panel

94 )))) Chapter 3

Here's how to use the **Editor Options** panel:

Drag Clips:Click on Move or Roll to determine how clipsMove/Rollbehave when you drag them.

The default mode, **Move**, allows you to move a clip by dragging it in the timeline. Click on the clip anywhere, except on the trim handles, and drag it where you want.

**Roll** allows you to move the "window" of the clip on the source tape. This changes the in and out points of the clip, without moving the clip on the timeline or changing its length. This accomplishes the same function as the **Slip Src** (Slip Source) editing mode (see "Slip Src (Source)" on page 89 for information on this mode), but by dragging the mouse instead of using the interface transport controls. This **Roll** button is automatically turned on when you open Slip Source mode.

To use the **Roll** function, do the following:

Click on the **Roll** button.

Your mouse pointer turns into the roll cursor, a circular yellow arrow over the selected clip.

Drag the roll cursor to the left to make the clip begin and end earlier on the source tape, and to the right to make the clip begin and end later on the source tape.

As you drag the roll cursor, you see the In Point and Out Point timecode under the left monitor change. The clip does not move on the timeline.

Editor Manual

GlobeCaster

Edits: Lock Trans(ition)/ Trim Clip/ Slide Edit	Click on either <b>Lock Trans, Trim Clip, or Slide</b> <b>Edit</b> to determine how clips behave when you move the edit points between two clips. <b>Lock Trans</b> locks the in or out points of a transition with the in or out points of the clips when you drag the clips on the timeline. So, if you make the overlap area of the clips shorter, the transition is also shorter. This contrasts to <b>Slide</b>
	<b>Edit</b> option, in which the length of the transition remains the same although its starting or ending point is changed. The <b>Lock Trans</b> button is automatically turned on in Transition Edit mode. See "Transition Edit Mode" on page 133 for information about this editing mode.
	<b>Trim Clip</b> is the default setting. When in <b>Trim</b> <b>Clip</b> mode, clips are trimmed when you move the edit point. This can also be done using the transport controls when in Trim Clip editing mode. See "Trim Clip Mode" on page 127 for information on this editing mode.
	When in <b>Slide Edit</b> mode and you move the edit point between two clips, length is added to or subtracted from the clips to keep the transition the same length. This mode moves neighboring effects at the same time to keep the effects lined up with the clip. The <b>Slide Edit</b> function performs the same function as the <b>Trim Edit</b> editing mode (see "Trim Edit Mode" on page 129 for information on this editing mode), but by dragging the mouse instead of using the interface transport controls.
Follow Rec (Recorder)	When this button is on and the recorder deck is played, the Position Bar on the timeline follows the timecode on the recorder deck.
Tape Scrub	Turns on the ability to scrub through linear tape sources in the timeline. <b>Tape Scrub</b> mode gives linear editing in the GlobeCaster Editor the feel of a non-linear system. It does, however, put a little more wear on the tapes, so we left it as an option. With this option on, scrub through your tapes either by moving the Position Bar or by using the Main Controls.



**Auto Beats** Auto Beats is an easy way to match edits to beats on a music track. Play the record deck and click on Mark In each time you want to create a new clip. The GlobeCaster Editor inserts alternating black and white placeholders into the timeline. You can use the shuttle control (or Play Speed in the Clip Main Properties panel) to play the tape slowly to capture the beat points precisely on the timeline. After marking the beats, rewind the tape and play it back while the GlobeCaster Editor cuts between black and white on the beats. This makes it easy to see whether you've missed any beats. When the timing is perfect, drop your source clips or stills from the bin onto each black or white clip. The GlobeCaster Editor automatically trims the source clip out points. Auto Scrub Allows you to control how audio scrubbing Length responds. You can set the length of audio (frames) to play for each position bar movement, and select how you wish to play the audio. You can choose



either Play up to pos bar, Play centered around pos bar, or Play from pos bar (Figure 3.52).

Figure 3.52: The Audio Scrub Playback Pop-Up Menu



Load Files To Source	Sets whether <b>Single Click</b> or <b>Double Click</b> loads framestores, matte color, or digitized clips into a monitor. Click on this button, and choose <b>Single</b> <b>Click</b> or <b>Double Click</b> from the pop-up menu.
	In the default mode, <b>Single Click</b> , clicking once on a file's picon in a bin loads that picon into a monitor. Double-click on the picon to load the file onto the timeline.
	Sometimes you may not want files to load into the monitor when you single-click on them. In this case, select <b>Double Click</b> , and the file won't load unless it is double-clicked. Drag the picon to load it onto the timeline.
	You can also drag picons to load them into the monitor. When you load a file, the <b>Source</b> button changes to the appropriate source type ( <b>Clip</b> , <b>Frame, Matte,</b> or <b>Black</b> ). See "Source Type Button" on page 65 for information on this button.
	<i>TIP</i> : If the monitor is grayed out, it means a complete source has not been designated, and you cannot drag-and-drop files into it (although you can still click on files to load them into such a monitor). Examples of incomplete sources are <b>Source A, Source B,</b> or <b>Source C</b> if no deck has been assigned to them, or if the deck has no tape or the tape has not been named, or <b>Clip</b> if no digitized clip is selected on the timeline.
Preview Mode	Sets how an edit is previewed. Clicking on this button brings up a pop-up menu with the following options: <b>VVV, VBV, BVB</b> .
	<b>VVV</b> (video video video) shows the video already on the record tape before the edit in point, the edit, and the video after the edit out point.
	<b>BVB</b> (black video black) blacks out the video already on the record tape before and after the edit, showing only the edit.
	VRV (video black video) shows the video on the

**VBV** (video black video) shows the video on the tape before and after the edit, but blacks out the edit.

98 )))) Chapter 3	
Auto-Asso Method	<b>mble</b> Sets the method GlobeCaster uses to assemble clips on a timeline. Clicking on this button brings up a pop-up menu with the following options: <b>Sequential</b> or <b>Checkerboard</b> .
	<b>Sequential</b> runs the clips in order on the timeline. This allows you to see the timeline assembled in order.
	<b>Checkerboard</b> mode analyzes the timeline and lays down every clip from each source tape in one pass by skipping down the timeline and performing edits out of sequence. This saves time and tape swapping because each tape source needs to be inserted only once. GlobeCaster even checks whether needed source tapes are already in the decks at the beginning of the Auto-Assemble and lays down the clips from those tapes first.
Timeline s Mark	<b>tarts,</b> Allows you to match the timeline start time to a specified timecode start time on your master tape. When you click the <b>Mark</b> button, the GlobeCaster Editor reads the current time on the selected record deck, and starts the timeline at that point. Or, you can type in the timecode of the starting point you desire and press <b>Enter</b> on your keyboard.
Reset time for assem	<b>Sine</b> Resets the Validation Bar at the top of the timeline so that all the elements of the timeline are recorded to the master tape then next time you click <b>Assemble</b> . The Validation Bar is a line across the top of the timeline that indicates which sections have been laid down to the master. Green sections have been recorded, red have not. If you don't click this button, only new elements are added to the master when you click <b>Assemble</b> . This option is handy if for some reason you want to re-record a clip that has already been laid down to the master.
Remove Unused Ta	Removes the name of tapes not required for the current timeline from the Tape Name button pop- up menu (for information on using this button, see "Tape Name" on page 47).
Load Tim On Scrub	<b>eline</b> Loads the timeline when the timeline is scrubbed.
Unload T	Unloads the data in the current timeline.
Load Tim From Pos	elineLoads the timeline starting at the current locationBarof the position bar.



Reaction Frames	Compensates for user reaction time when using the <b>Mark In</b> or <b>Mark Out</b> buttons. If you type <b>5</b> here, for example, the GlobeCaster Editor marks the in and out points 5 frames earlier than where you hit the mark buttons.
Postroll	Sets the amount of time the deck rolls after an edit.
Max Safe Preroll	Sets the maximum time before an event that the GlobeCaster Editor prerolls. Default is 30 seconds. Adjusting this setting could be handy if you need frames right at the beginning of a tape. If you decrease this number or set it to 0, the GlobeCaster Editor won't try to back up past the beginning of the tape.
Abort edits if off by more than	Sets the degree of accuracy the GlobeCaster Editor requires. The GlobeCaster Editor is a frame- accurate editor, but allows you the flexibility of using decks that are less than frame accurate. This setting is the number of frames within which the GlobeCaster Editor requires all edits to be accurate. All VTRs occasionally miss an edit by not syncing up during the preroll. If the edit is off by more than the number of frames specified, the GlobeCaster Editor stops before the edit begins and tries it again.
Aborted Edit Retries	Sets the number of times the GlobeCaster Editor tries to perform an edit.
The Timeline Event	pop-up menu appears when you right-click on an are

**Timeline Even** ea of the Pop-Up Menu timeline. It is context sensitive, so the options you see depend on what is on the timeline and whether you right-click on a clip, effect, or blank area of the timeline. In general, the features on the pop-up menu allow you to delete or select events,



make choices about how the timeline is displayed, set properties for clips, animate audio levels, digitize clips, or perform specialized functions.

Delete Event
Delete Selected Events
Snap
Coloot All
Select All
Select Frack
Select None
Invert Track
Invert Selection
Select From Here
Select From Here on This Track
Expand Tree
Expand All
Collapse Tree
Properties
Higher Priority
Turn into Framestore
Digitize to Time Machine
Add to Batch Digitize
Show Audio Waveform
Export Audio
Export to AVI
Ungroup Audio & Video Events
Show filenames upon selection
- Flatten Event

Figure 3.53: Timeline Event Pop-Up Menu

Editor Manual



Video Event<br/>MenKeyframe<br/>MenTrack MenImage: Comparison of the state of the s

For clarity in this manual, each menu will be shown on the timeline and then explained in the following sections.

**Keyframe Menu** To access the Keyframe menu, right-click on a keyframe control knob (Figure 3.55).



Figure 3.55: Keyframe Control Knob

**102** Chapter 3

The Keyframe pop-up menu appears. It has settings that allow you to manipulate the volume of your audio tracks.

✓ Linear Cubic Hold
Delete Key Edit Key
Properties Add Keyframe
Add Dip Add Fade In Add Fade Out
Show Audio Waveform Export Audio Export to AVI
Ungroup Audio & Video Events

Figure 3.56: The Keyframe Pop-Up Menu



Audio Event<br/>MenuTo access the Audio Event menu, right-click on an audio event in an Audio track,<br/>the following menu is displayed.

Delete Event
Delete Selected Events
Snap
Select All
Select Track
Select None
Invert Track
Invert Selection
Select From Here
Select From Here on This Track
Expand Tree
Expand All
Collapse Tree
Deservation
Properties
Properties Digitize to Time Machine
Properties Digitize to Time Machine Add to Batch Digitize
Properties Digitize to Time Machine Add to Batch Digitize Add Fade In Add Fade Out
Properties Digitize to Time Machine Add to Batch Digitize Add Fade In Add Fade Out Show Audio Waveform
Properties Digitize to Time Machine Add to Batch Digitize Add Fade In Add Fade Out Show Audio Waveform Export Audio
Properties Digitize to Time Machine Add to Batch Digitize Add Fade In Add Fade Out Show Audio Waveform Export Audio
Properties Digitize to Time Machine Add to Batch Digitize Add Fade In Add Fade Out Show Audio Waveform Export Audio Export to AVI
Properties Digitize to Time Machine Add to Batch Digitize Add Fade In Add Fade Out Show Audio Waveform Export Audio Export to AVI Ungroup Audio & Video Events Halve track beint
Properties Digitize to Time Machine Add to Batch Digitize Add Fade In Add Fade Out Show Audio Waveform Export Audio Export to AVI Ungroup Audio & Video Events Halve track height
Properties Digitize to Time Machine Add to Batch Digitize Add Fade In Add Fade Out Show Audio Waveform Export Audio Export to AVI Ungroup Audio & Video Events Halve track height Reset track height

Figure 3.57: Audio Event Menu

104 Chapter 3

Audio Level Track Menu The **Audio Level Track** menu (Figure 3.58) is displayed when you right-click on the Audio Level Track.

Halve track height
Reset track height
Double track height
Snap
Zoom x2
Zoom 1/2
Fit Selected
Fit All
Zoom At Position Bar
Properties
Properties Add Keyframe
Properties Add Keyframe Add Dip
Properties Add Keyframe Add Dip Add Fade In
Properties Add Keyframe Add Dip Add Fade In Add Fade Out
Properties Add Keyframe Add Dip Add Fade In Add Fade Out Show Audio Waveform
Properties Add Keyframe Add Dip Add Fade In Add Fade Out Show Audio Waveform Export Audio
Properties Add Keyframe Add Dip Add Fade In Add Fade Out Show Audio Waveform Export Audio Export to AVI
Properties Add Keyframe Add Dip Add Fade In Add Fade Out Show Audio Waveform Export Audio Export to AVI Ungroup Audio & Video Events

Figure 3.58: The Audio Level Track Pop-Up Menu


Video Event<br/>MenuThe Video Event menu (Figure 3.59) is displayed when right-click on an event in<br/>the Video track.

Delete Event
Delete Selected Events
Snap
Select All
Select Track
Select None
Invert Track
Invert Selection
Select From Here
Select From Here on This Track
Expand Tree
Expand All
Collapse Tree
Properties
Higher Priority
Turn into Framestore
Digitize to Time Machine
Add to Batch Digitize
Add to Batch Digitize Show Audio Waveform
Add to Batch Digitize Show Audio Waveform Export Audio
Add to Batch Digitize Show Audio Waveform Export Audio Show filenames upon selection

Figure 3.59: The Video Event Pop-Up Menu

106 Chapter 3 **Track Menu** 

The **Track** Menu (Figure 3.60) is displayed when you right-click on a track a track that has children. The items: **Expand Tree**, **Expand All**, and **Collapse Tree** will only be available on tracks that have children.





Timeline Menu<br/>ItemsFollowing is an explanation of the options that may appear on the Timeline pop-<br/>up menus, listed in alphabetical order.

Add Dip Adds several keyframes to make the audio drop out momentarily. The dip can be modified by moving the keyframes.



Figure 3.61: A Dip Added to an Audio Level Track

Add Fade In Adds a keyframe to form a fade in.



Figure 3.62: A Fade In Added to an Audio Level Track



**Add Fade Out** Adds a keyframe to form a fade out.



Figure 3.63: A Fade Out Added to an Audio Level Track

Add Keyframe Adds a keyframe to the audio track of the timeline. This keyframe allows you to adjust the level up or down. Transitions between keyframes are represented by lines in the audio track.

Add PauseCreates a pause point event on the Pause track.Point



Figure 3.64: Added Pause Point

When playing the timeline back, the timeline will automatically pause at the points without you having to hit the **Pause** button. You can then wait before hitting the **Play** button to continue playing the timeline.

If you have a looping effect that you want to play while the timeline is paused, select **Loop While Paused** on the **Effect Properties** panel. For more information, see "Loop While Paused" on page 119.

108	))))	Chapter 3
-----	------	-----------

Add to Batch Digitize	Available when you right-click on an event. Adds selected events to a list to be digitized later. First, select the event or events you want to digitize. Do this by clicking on the event, or by holding down the <b>Control</b> key on your keyboard and clicking on multiple event. Or, right-click on an event and choose one of the select options, such as <b>Select All</b> or <b>Select From Here</b> , from the pop-up menu. Once you have selected the events, right-click on one of them and choose <b>Add to Batch Digitize</b> from the pop-up menu. When you're ready to batch digitize the events, click on the <b>Batch Dugitize</b> window. (For information on how to use the <b>Batch Digitize</b> window, see "Digitizing With Time Machine" on page 138.)
Adjust color	Available when you right-click on matte color clip on the timeline. Choosing this option opens the Matte Color panel, where you can change the color of the clip. For information on how to use this panel, see "Effect Border Color And Matte Color Panels" on page 121.
Animate Level	Available if you right-click on a gray area of a <b>Level</b> track between the start and end of an audio clip, or if you right-click on the audio clip on the <b>Audio</b> track.
	Turns animation on so you can adjust the volume level of the audio tracks, creating fade ins, fade outs, peaks, and dips. You see the <b>Animate Level</b> option when you right-click in a gray area of an Audio Level track between the in and out points for the audio. (You can also turn on <b>Animate Level</b> by clicking on the <b>Animate</b> button in the <b>Clip Audio</b> <b>Properties</b> panel. See "Clip Audio Properties" on page 164 for information on how to do this.)
	Once you have selected <b>Animate Level</b> , you can adjust the volume levels on the timeline. Right- click on a gray area of the timeline again. Now you see the following options at the bottom of the pop- up menu: <b>Add Keyframe, Add Dip, Add Fade In,</b> and <b>Add Fade Out</b> .

For information on how to animate audio, see "Animating Audio On The Timeline" on page 155.

GlobeCaster (109



**Collapse Tree** Available if you right-click in a Video or Audio track. Hides child tracks of the selected track. Audio 1-4 are child tracks of the Video tracks, and one Level track is a child track of each Audio track.

> Choosing Collapse Tree is the same as clicking on the - sign next to the name of the parent tracks.

You see this option when two clips overlap. It **Create Cross-**Fade creates fade ins and fade outs on both audio tracks of both clips. The GlobeCaster Editor fades out the audio on the first clip on the timeline, and fades in the second clip.



Figure 3.65: A Cross-Fade Added to an Audio Level Track

- **Create Dissolve** Available if you right-click on a clip in an area where it overlaps with another clip. Creates a dissolve transition where two clips overlap.
- Cubic Makes the transition from one keyframe to the next a curved line.



Figure 3.66: Keyframes Set to Cubic

This "rounds out" the transitions between keyframes by varying the rate at which the audio level changes.

**Delete Event** Available if you right-click on an event. Removes the event that you right-clicked on from the timeline. **Delete Key** Deletes the selected keyframe.

# 110 )))) Chapter 3

Delete Selected Events	Available if you right-click on an event. Removes selected events from the timeline. Select multiple events by holding down the <b>Control</b> key and clicking on the events.
Digitize to Time Machine	Available if you have Time Machine installed and you right-click on an event. Digitizes selected clips. Digitized clips are saved onto your Time Machine hard drives. Digitized clips are indicated on the timeline by a dark blue color. To save a picon of the clip as a shortcut, click on the clip on the timeline to select it, then drag the Current Clip picon into a bin.
Double track height	Available if you right-click in an open Level track. Displays the selected Level track at twice its current height. This is useful for precisely editing audio level keyframe positions.
Edit Key	Opens the <b>Edit Key</b> panel, where you can precisely adjust the level of the selected keyframe (see the previous section for information on how to use this panel).
Effect Properties	Available if you right-clicked on a transition, such as a dissolve. Brings up the <b>Effect Properties</b> panel, where you can set properties that allow you to tailor effects to your needs. See "Effect Properties Panel" on page 118 for information on how to use this panel.
Expand All	Available if you right-click on a Video or Audio track. Displays all child tracks belonging to the selected track.
Expand Tree	Available if you right-click on a Video or Audio track. Displays child tracks of the selected track. Audio 1-4 are child tracks of the Video tracks, and one Level track is a child track of each Audio track.
	Choosing this pop-up menu option is the same as clicking on the + sign next to the name of the parent track.
Fit All	Available if you right-click in a gray area of the timeline (not on an event). Sizes the timeline so that the entire timeline fits into the window.
Fit Selected	Available if you right-click in a gray area of the timeline (not on an event). Sizes the timeline so that all selected items fit into the window.

11 Glob

eCaster 베 1	11
-------------	----

Flatten Event	Flattens all events in the event's range into a Time Machine Clip. Available if you right-click on an event.	
Flatten Selected	Performs a <i>flatten event</i> on each selected event. Available if you right-click in an open track.	
Flatten Timeline	Flattens all the events on the timeline into a Time Machine clip. Available if you right-click in an open track.	
Halve track height	Available if you right-click in an open Level track. Displays the selected Level track at half its current height.	
Higher Priority	height. Available if you right-click on an event. If two or more clips or effects are in the same area on a timeline, GlobeCaster applies a top-down prioritization. In other words, it plays back the clip on the highest track in the timeline. Occasionally, however, it's inconvenient to move a clip from track to track just to change its priority, so the GlobeCaster Editor provides a handy way to break the priority rule. Right-click on a clip and choose <b>Higher Priority</b> . This tells the GlobeCaster Editor to play the entire clip even if there are overlapping clips on the higher priority tracks. If two overlapping clips both have <b>Higher Priority</b> turned on, then the old rule applies: the clip on the higher track plays.	
Hold	Maintains the value of the previous keyframe until the next keyframe.	

Figure 3.67: Keyframes Set to Hold This means the audio level jumps from the setting

.

	of one keyframe to the setting of the next.
Invert Selection	Available if you right-click on an event. Selects the items on the entire timeline that previously were not selected, and deselects those that were.
Invert Track	Available if you right-click on an event. Selects the items on a single track that previously were not selected, and deselects those that were.

**112** )))) Chapter 3

Linear

The default mode, this makes the transition from one keyframe to the next a straight line.



Figure 3.68: Keyframes Set to Linear

This means the audio level changes at a constant rate from one keyframe to the next.

Make A/V EditAvailable if you create a dissolve between two<br/>linear clips from the same source tape, then right-<br/>click on one of the clips in the area where they<br/>overlap. Creates an A/V roll edit, a type of edit<br/>unique to GlobeCaster. Instead of using a single<br/>frame to perform a transition between two clips on<br/>the same source tape, the A/V roll edit converts a<br/>portion of one of the clips to a ClipMem. A<br/>ClipMem is a bit of digitized video recorded to the<br/>RAM on the Warp Engine. In essence, you are<br/>transitioning between two sources, and the<br/>resulting edit is indistinguishable from a standard<br/>A/B roll edit.

To create an A/V roll edit, right-click on one of the clips where they overlap and select Make A/V Edit from the pop-up menu. (The clip you right-click on is the one the GlobeCaster Editor makes the ClipMem of.) The GlobeCaster Editor creates a ClipMem for the length of the transition. If the transition is longer than the maximum length for a ClipMem in your system, the GlobeCaster Editor creates as many ClipMems as are needed to cover the transition. The ClipMems are saved in Bins\Clips. The next time you click on Assemble, the GlobeCaster Editor loads the ClipMem file into the Warp Engine, and records the transition in one pass and the other video clip in the next pass. If the edit uses multiple ClipMems, the GlobeCaster Editor makes multiple passes. The GlobeCaster Editor matches frames to make the finished edit look seamless (you must have decks capable of match-frame editing for this to work).

GlobeCaster



Keep in mind that the Warp Engine is being used as a video recording and playback device, so you cannot use warp effects at the same time. Wipe and dissolve effects (with or without graphics) work great with a ClipMem, but not warping digital video effects. For these type of effects, use the A/X roll edit described below. See "Creating A/V And A/ X Edits" on page 206 for more detailed instructions on creating an A/V edit.

Make A/X Edit Available if you create a dissolve between two linear clips, then right-click on one of the clips in the area where they overlap. Creates an A/X roll edit, which is a transition between two clips on the same tape. GlobeCaster does this by using a single frame for one of the clips during the transition.

> To create an A/X roll edit, right-click on the clip you want to "freeze" during the effect, and select Make A/X Edit from the pop-up menu. The GlobeCaster Editor automatically selects the correct frame of the transitional effect, and splits the clip into a video clip leading up to the transition and a framestore lasting the precise length of the transition. When you next click **Assemble**, the GlobeCaster Editor lays the first clip onto the master, and then cues up the framestore and the second clip for the second pass. Matchframing is done automatically, so the edit looks seamless (you must have decks capable of matchframe editing for this to work). The framestores are saved in GlobeCaster\Bins\stills\AX\_stills, if you ever want to use them again.

See "Creating A/V And A/X Edits" on page 206 for more detailed instructions on creating an A/X edit.

**Properties** Available when you right-click in a gray area of an Audio Level track between the in and out points for the audio; when you right-click on the audio clip on the Audio track; or when you right-click on the clip in the Video track.

> Brings up the Clip Main Properties panel, where you can set the basic properties of a clip, such as play speed, which audio and video channels are recorded, and color correction. You can also access the Clip Audio Properties panel, where you can set the audio levels for a clip. See "Clip Main Properties Panel" on page 75 and "Clip Audio Properties" on page 164 for information on how to use these panels.

114 )))) Chapter 3

Record to Harddrive	Available if you right-click on a linear clip. It creates a ClipMem, a bit of digitized video recorded to the RAM on the Warp Engine card and stored on the PC hard drive. This is useful if you do not have a Time Machine. It allows you to store a short clip of uncompressed digitized video and then use it for rotoscoping, animation, transitions between clips on the same source tape, etc. The amount of video storage you have depends on the amount of RAM on your Warp Engine. With 128 MB of RAM (the maximum) you can record just over 6 seconds of video. The standard 16 MB of RAM records 20 frames, or 2/3 of a second. If the clip you want to record to the hard drive is longer than the capacity of the RAM, the GlobeCaster Editor creates multiple ClipMems.
Redo	Available if you used the <b>Undo</b> function. Redoes undone actions in reverse sequence.
Remove Gap	Available if you right-click in a gray area where there are no events in any tracks on the timeline. Removes dead time from a timeline, such as a space that is left when you delete a clip. Selecting <b>Remove Gap</b> moves clips on the right side of the timeline to the left in order to close the gap.
Remove All Gaps	Available if you right-click in a gray area where there are no events in any tracks on the timeline. Removes dead time from a timeline, such as a space that is left when you delete a clip. Selecting <b>Remove All Gaps</b> moves all of the clips on the right side of the timeline to the left in order to close all of the gaps.
Replace with Dissolve	Available if you right-click on a transition. Replaces the current effect with a dissolve.
Reset track height	Available if you right-click on an open Level track. Resets the selected track to its original height.
Select All	Available if you right-click on an event. Selects all events on the timeline.
Select From Here	Available if you right-click on an event. Selects the event you right-clicked on and all following events on the timeline.
Select From Here on This Track	Available if you right-click on an event. Selects the event you right-clicked on and all following events on that track of the timeline.



Select None	Available if you right-click on an event. Deselects all events on the timeline.
Select Track	Available if you right-click on an event. Selects all events on a track of the timeline.
Show Filenames Upon Selection	Allows for easy identification of project items when needed.
Snap	Available if you right-click anywhere on the timeline. Brings up the Snap Frames pop-up menu, where you can turn the Snap feature on or off, or choose the number of snap frames. (See "The Snap Frames Pop-Up Menu" on page 117 for information on how to use this pop-up menu.)
Split at PosBar (Position Bar)	Available if the Position Bar is over a clip you right- clicked on. Splits the clip at the location of the position bar. This is useful when trimming clips. Scrub through the clip, stopping at the frame where you would like the clip to end. The position bar is located at this frame. Right-click on the clip and choose <b>Split at PosBar</b> . Delete the new clip created to the right of the Position Bar to get rid of the extra footage. The clip you want, trimmed to the exact ending frame you want, remains to the left of the Position Bar. <i>TIP:</i> You can also press <b>Control + s</b> on your keyboard to split clips and stills at the Position Bar. You can use this method to split clips and stills as the timeline plays back.
Turn into Framestore	Available if you right-click on a clip. Creates a framestore (still) of the clip, using the first frame.
Undo	Available if you have just performed an action on the timeline. Undoes actions in reverse sequence.
Ungroup Audio and Video Events	Available when you have a clip that has both video and audio components. Right-click on this clip and select <b>Ungroup Audio and Video Events</b> . This will split the clip into its two components: the video event and the audio events. In this state, the events can be moved or trimmed independent of one another. However, the audio events will remain locked to each other.
Zoom 1/2	Available if you right-click in a gray area of the timeline (not on an event). Displays the timeline at half its current length, if the timeline is zoomed out. If it is not zoomed out, this function does not shrink the length of the timeline.

**116** )))) Chapter 3

Zoom All	Available if you right-click in a gray area of the timeline. Enlarges the display of the entire timeline.
Zoom at Position Bar, Zoom at PosBar	Available if you right-click in a gray area of the timeline (not on an event). Enlarges the display of the area of the timeline where the position bar is.
Zoom x2	Available if you right-click in a gray area of the timeline (not on an event). Displays the timeline at twice its current length. You can select this multiple times.

Editor Manual



The Snap Frames Pop-Up Menu Similar to those in graphics programs, the snap function aids in lining up clips precisely on the timeline. When Snap is turned on, the alignment bar turns yellow when it is within the set number of frames. You can then release the event, and it jumps into place. The Snap Frames pop-up menu is where you can set the margin within which clips snap into place, and where you can turn this function on or off.

The Snap function works for audio events if the Levels tracks are open. If the Levels tracks are not open, Snap functions for the Video tracks only.

Access the Snap Frames pop-up menu by right-clicking in a gray area of the timeline to bring up the Timeline pop-up menu (see previous section), and selecting **Snap**. The Snap Frames pop-up menu appears.

🗸 Snap Off	
1 Frame	
2 Frames	
3 Frames	
4 Frames	
5 Frames	
7 Frames	
10 Frames	
15 Frames	
20 Frames	

Figure 3.69: The Snap Frames Pop-Up Menu

To turn the snap function on or off, choose **Snap Off**. Or select the number of frames you want as the snap margin.

118 Chapter 3

Effect Properties Panel With the **Effects Properties** panel, you can tailor effects to your needs by adjusting attributes such as softness, duration, direction, etc. To access the panel, right-click on an effect in the timeline, bringing up the Timeline pop-up menu. Choose **Effect Properties**. The **Effect Properties** panel appears in the upper left corner of the screen.

Effect Picon	Effect Properties X \Bins\FX\Sampler\_FlameUp.tfx From Video 1 To Video 2 Aux: 7 Effect Info
	Compiled transition Graphics FX Key DSK Key
	Fade In 0 Fade Out 0 Duration 19 Reversed Loop While Paused Surface Wipe Softness: 127 Filp Vertically Border: 017

Figure 3.70: The Effect Properties Panel

Some of the values in the panel are for wipes or downstream effects. Values and buttons are grayed out when they don't apply to the selected effect.

Here's how to use the **Effect Properties** panel:

Effect Picon	Displays the picon of the selected effect.
From, To	Designates which track a transition starts from and moves to. Clicking on these buttons brings up a pop-up menu with the options <b>Video 1</b> , <b>Video 2</b> , and <b>Video 3</b> (if you have all three video tracks open on your timeline). This is a handy way to change the effect without having to move clips on the timeline.

Editor Manual

GlobeCaster 에 119

Aux (Auxiliary)	Use this button in conjunction with the <b>Border</b> button at the bottom of the panel to create wipes with a third video source as the border for the wipe. First, click on the <b>Border</b> button and select <b>Auxiliary Source</b> from the pop-up menu. Next, click on this <b>Aux</b> button near the top of the panel. You see a pop-up menu listing the video tracks of the timeline: <b>Video 1, Video 2,</b> and <b>Video 3</b> . Choose the track that has the video source you want to use as the border for the wipe. For example, if you have a wipe that transitions from the <b>Video 1</b> track to the <b>Video 2</b> track, place the source you want to use as the border on the <b>Video 3</b> track underneath the wipe, and set this button to <b>Video 3</b> .
Effect Info	Displays information about the effect, including its type.
Fade In	Sets how long (in frames) it takes for an effect to fade in. Set this value by highlighting the number in the box, typing in the desired number, and pressing <b>Enter</b> on your keyboard. You can also click on the number and drag your mouse up or down.
Fade Out	Sets how long (in frames) it takes for an effect to fade out. Set this value by highlighting the number in the box, typing in the desired number, and pressing <b>Enter</b> on your keyboard. You can also click on the number and drag your mouse up or down.
Duration	Works only with variable length effects (i.e. wipes). This allows you to change the duration (in frames).
Reversed	Reverses the direction of an effect. Click on this button to turn it on.
Loop While Paused	Supports effects that are looping while the timeline is paused. Select this button if you have an effect that you want playing while the rest of the timeline is paused.
Surface Wipe: Softness	Adjusts the softness of the edges of the effect. Set this value by highlighting the number in the box, typing in the desired number, and pressing <b>Enter</b> on your keyboard. You can also click on the number and drag your mouse up or down. Try 25 for a soft edge for your wipe without losing the shape of the wipe.
Flip Vertically	Flips a transition vertically. For example, if a wipe transitions from the top, clicking <b>Flip Vertically</b> makes it transition from the bottom.

**120** )))) Chapter 3

Border

Brings up a pop-up menu with the following options: **Off, Solid Color, Graphics,** and **Auxiliary Source**. These options allow you to apply a border to wipes. If you cannot apply a border to the effect selected, this button is grayed out.

Use this **Border** setting in conjunction with the **Surface Wipe: Softness** setting. If the **Softness** setting is left on the default setting of 1, the wipe has a hard edge with very little border, and you won't be able to see the border you assign. Try setting the Softness at 25 for a soft edge and a visible border.

Here's what the Border choices do:

Off gives the effect no border.

**Solid Color** adds a colored border to the effect (Figure 3.71). The color can be changed by clicking on the mini color picon next to the **Border** button. This brings up the **Effect Border Color** panel (see the following section for information on how to use this panel).



Figure 3.71: A Clockwise Wipe with a White Border

**Graphics** allows you to select the graphics from the current DSK (downstream key) as a border.

Editor Manual

GlobeCaster ( 121

Use this button in conjunction with the **Aux** button at the top of the panel to create wipes with a third video source as the border for the wipe. First, click on this **Border** button and select **Auxiliary Source** from the pop-up menu. Next, click on the **Aux** button near the top of the panel. You see a pop-up menu listing the video tracks of the timeline: **Video 1, Video 2,** and **Video 3**. Choose the track that has the video source you want to use as the border for the wipe. For example, if you have a wipe that transitions from the **Video 1** track to the **Video 2** track, place the source you want to use as the border on the **Video 3** track underneath the wipe, and set this button to **Video 3**.

Effect Border Color And Matte Color Panels The **Effect Border Color** and **Matte Color** panels look and function the same. The **Effect Border Color** panel gives you a place to select the color of a border for an effect. The **Matte Color** panel is used to select the color of a matte clip on the timeline.



Figure 3.72: Effect Border Color Panel

The **Effect Border Color** panel is used in conjunction with the **Solid Color** option for **Border** on the **Effect Properties** panel. If you choose **Solid Color**, you can set the color here. You can select a color from a set of pre-mixed colors, or mix your own color.

To access the Effect Border Color panel, right-click on an event to bring up the Event pop-up menu, and choose **Effect Properties**. This opens the **Effect Properties** panel (see previous section for information on how to use the **Effect Properties** panel). On this panel, click on the mini color picon next to the Border button at the bottom right of the panel. The **Effect Border Color** panel appears.

To access the **Matte Color** panel, right-click on a matte clip on the timeline, and choose **Adjust color** from the pop-up menu.

# **122** )))) Chapter 3

Here's how to use the **Effect Border Color** and **Matte Color** panels:

Revert	Resets settings to the original color.
Color Picon	Displays the current color. As you edit the color, the picon changes to show the new color. Drag this picon into a bin to save the current color.
RGB/HSV	Sets the color format. Clicking this button brings up a pop-up menu with the options <b>RGB</b> (red green blue) or <b>HSV</b> (hue saturation value). Choose <b>RGB</b> to adjust the colors of the picon, and <b>HSV</b> to adjust the hue, saturation, and value. Then use the sliders and value windows on the top right of the panel to adjust the properties you chose.
Red, Green, Blue/Hue, Saturation, Value Sliders and Windows	Clicking-and-dragging these three sliders changes the color values. If you selected <b>RGB</b> , the sliders adjust red, green, and blue values. If you selected <b>HSV</b> , the sliders adjust hue, saturation, and value. You can also adjust these values by typing a number into the value windows to the right of the sliders and pressing <b>Enter</b> on your keyboard.
Mini Color Picons	These small color picons in the lower right corner of the panel serve as a palette of pre-mixed colors. They can be selected by dragging-and-dropping them into the color picon on the panel, or by double-clicking on them. The color of a mini color picon can also be changed by dragging-and- dropping the color picon onto it, allowing you to customize the colors in the mini picon palette. Like the color picon, the color of a mini color picon can be saved by dragging it into a bin.
Default	Resets the mini color picons to the default colors. Any custom color picons you created are lost unless you saved them by dragging their picons to a bin.
Pick	Allows you to pick a color from any image on the screen and match it exactly. To do this, click on the <b>Pick</b> button. The video on the on-screen monitor freezes so you can pick a color from the current frame. Still holding down the mouse button, drag the mouse over the color you want. Release the mouse button. The color that the mouse is over loads as the color picon, and its values are displayed as the color values.



## Effect Properties Panel as Chroma Keyer

You can place a Chroma Key file as an event on the timeline's FX track similar to placing a dissolve, wipe, or other transition between two video events. Instead of being a transition, the Chroma Keyer will key one of the video sources over the other. If you choose the **Properties** menu item, the **Effect Properties** panel will be shown with a slightly different interface as shown in Figure 3.73.

Effect Properties
\Bins\cks
Key [Video 1] Over [Video 2] Mode: Mix
Effect Info
Compiled effect
Fade In 0 Fade Out 0 Duration 30
Reversed Loop While Paused
Softness: 1 Flip Vertically
Border:

Figure 3.73: Alternate Effects Properties Panel

This alternate Effects Properties panel has these different features:

Key	Designates which track is the key source.
Over	Designates which track is the background source.
Mode	Displays a drop-down box that allows you to select the keyer mode.

**124** Chapter 3

### Using Advanced Editing Modes

The GlobeCaster Editor has five advanced editing modes that help you fine-tune your edits quickly and precisely. These editing modes are **Trim Clip**, **Trim Edit**, **Slip Source**, **Slide**, and **Transition Edit**. In these editing modes, the frames displayed in the monitors and the controls under the monitors are tailored for specific tasks. This section explains the purpose of each mode and the functions of its buttons.

To activate one of the advanced editing modes, click on its button in the Timeline Controls on the toolbar (Figure 3.74).

Timeline	Trim Clip	2 3 4
	Trim Edit	Add Clip
	Slip Src	Trans Edit
	Slide	View
Save	New	Ripple

Figure 3.74: The Timeline Controls

Or, use the keyboard shortcuts:

1	Trim Clip
2	Trim Edit
3	Slip Source
4	Slide
5	Trans Edit
6	Add Clip
7	View
Shift + 2	Two-monitor mode
Shift + 3	Three-monitor mode
Shift + 4	Four-monitor mode

The default editing mode is Add Clip. This is the general-purpose editing mode for logging clips and building a timeline. In this mode, the left monitors display sources and the right monitor displays the output, the timeline or record deck. To return to this mode, click on the **Add Clip** button in the Timeline Controls on the toolbar.

The advanced editing modes can be used for linear or non-linear editing. When working with linear clips, turn on **Tape Scrub** in the Editor Options panel if you want the monitors to update as you adjust the clips (see "Editor Options Panel" on page 93 for information on how to do this).



The advanced editing modes are useful when working with digitized clips, as Time Machine automatically adds 1 second of trim room on each end of the clip. The advanced editing modes let you see the true in and out points of the clips.

For all but one of the editing modes, you can choose whether to view two, three, or four monitors. The exception to this is Transition Edit mode. This mode requires a four-monitor display and opens four monitors automatically when you click the **Trans Edit** button.

Slip Source and Slide modes work differently in the two-monitor display, but if you open four monitors these two modes are the same. In four-monitor mode, both Slip Source and Slide function as Slip Source for the clip in the middle two monitors and Slide for the clips in the end monitors. Both the **Slip Src** and **Slide** buttons on the interface light up to remind you that both modes are active. This allows you access to both functions at once, so you can choose to adjust the in and out points without changing the clip's duration or position on the timeline (Slip Source mode), *or* by adjusting the duration of the clip and adjusting neighboring clips to compensate (Slide mode).

In the advanced editing modes, gray tracks that simulate the sprocket holes on the edge of film appear above and below the monitors (Figure 3.75). These are a visual cue to help you see which frames are on the same clip. If the sprocket holes are continuous between two monitors, the frames displayed by the monitors are on the same clip. If there is a break between the sprocket holes, the frames are from different clips.



Figure 3.75: Film Sprocket Holes in Transition Edit Mode

In each editing mode, transport controls appear under appropriate monitors. These controls are similar to the controls on a VTR.

# **126** Chapter 3

Following is a description of the transport controls:

Transport Controls	Control the selected device. The buttons, in order from left to right, are:	
	• Jog Back 10 Frames	
	Moves back or trims 10 frames at a time	
<5	Jog Back 5 Frames	
	Moves back or trims five frames at a time	
	• Jog Back 1 Frame	
	Moves back or trims one frame at a time	
	• Pause	
_	Puts deck in Pause mode, pausing playback if the deck is rolling, or spooling the tape so it is ready to play if the deck is stopped.	
	• Jog Forward 1 Frame	
	Moves ahead or trims one frame at a time	
5►	• Jog Forward 5 Frames	
	Moves ahead or trims five frames at a time	
10	• Jog Forward 10 Frames	
	Moves ahead or trims 10 frames at a time	

The following sections explain the functions of the other monitor controls in the advanced editing modes, as well as the purpose of each mode.

Editor Manual

GlobeCaster

**Trim Clip Mode** Trim Clip mode is designed for trimming single clips. It displays the first frame of the selected clip in the left monitor, and the last frame of the clip in the right monitor (Figure 3.76). The controls trim or add time to the beginning or end of the clip. There is an option, Loop Clip, that allows you to play the clip repeatedly in a loop so you can see the in and out points as you adjust them.



Figure 3.76: Trim Clip Mode

Following is an explanation of the control buttons in Trim Clip mode:

In/Out Timecode	Displays the timecode of the selected clip's in point and out point. To set a specific timecode as the in or out point, type in the timecode and press <b>Enter</b> on your keyboard.
Revert	Undoes changes to the selected clip and reverts to the clip settings from the last saved version of the timeline. The timeline must have been saved at least once in order for this to work. To use this function, click on the desired clip to select it, then click on the <b>Revert</b> button. The clip may not be able to revert if you have trimmed it and moved another clip into its spot on the timeline.
Loop Clip	Plays the selected clip in a continuous loop. You can use this feature to repeatedly play a clip as you fine- tune its in and out points. To stop the loop, click this button again, or click the stop or pause buttons in the transport controls.

**128** )))) Chapter 3

Loop Clip Timecode	Sets the amount of the timeline that is included in the loop before and after the clip. If you type 00:00:01:00, for example, and press <b>Enter</b> on your keyboard, the loop begins playing 1 second before the clip and continues playing 1 second after the clip.
	Use the -/+ buttons to the right to decrease or increase this time by 1 second.
Duration	Displays the duration of the clip. Change the duration of the clip by typing in a timecode and pressing <b>Enter</b> on your keyboard.
	Use the <b>-</b> /+ buttons to the right to decrease or increase the duration by 1 second.

GlobeCaster ( 129

**Trim Edit Mode** Trim Edit mode helps you adjust edits between two clips. It is designed for precision editing down to individual frames. The left monitor displays the last frame of the preceding clip and the right monitor displays the first frame of the selected clip. You can trim time off or add to the clips. There is an option, Loop Edit, that allows you to play the transition between the clips repeatedly in a continuous loop, and an option, Loop Clip, that allows you to play the selected clip in a loop.

Figure 3.77 shows the GlobeCaster Editor in Trim Edit mode.

**NOTE:** Click on the second clip of the edit to select it in order to load the monitors properly.



Figure 3.77: Trim Edit Mode

In Trim Edit mode, you can also choose to display four monitors if you want to see the first frame of the first clip and the last frame of the selected clip.

Following is an explanation of the buttons in Trim Edit mode:

Out/In Timecode	Displays the timecode of the last and first frames of the edit. To set a specific timecode as the last or first frame of one of the clips, type in the timecode and press <b>Enter</b> on your keyboard.
Revert	Undoes changes and reverts to the properties set for the clip in the last saved version of the timeline.
Loop Edit	Plays the selected portion of the timeline in a loop. This allows you to watch the edit repeatedly and see the new in and out points as you change them. To stop the loop, click this button again, or click the stop or pause buttons in the transport controls.

# **130** )))) Chapter 3

Loop Edit Timecode	Sets the amount of the timeline that is included in the loop before and after the edit. If you type 00:00:01:00, for example, and press <b>Enter</b> on your keyboard, the loop begins playing 1 second before the edit and continues playing 1 second after the edit.
	Use the -/+ buttons to the right to decrease or increase this time by 1 second.
Loop Clip	Plays the selected clip in a continuous loop. You can use this feature to repeatedly play a clip as you fine-tune its in and out points. To stop the loop, click this button again, or click the stop or pause buttons in the transport controls.
Loop Clip Timecode	Sets the amount of the timeline that is included in the loop before and after the clip. If you type 00:00:01:00, for example, and press <b>Enter</b> on your keyboard, the loop begins playing 1 second before the clip and continues playing 1 second after the clip.
	Use the -/+ buttons to the right to decrease or increase this time by 1 second.
Duration	Displays the duration of the clip. Change the duration of the clip by typing in a timecode and pressing <b>Enter</b> on your keyboard.
	Use the -/+ buttons to the right to decrease or increase the duration by 1 second.



**Slip Source Mode** Slip Source edit mode is used to adjust the in and out points of a clip without changing its duration or position on the timeline. It "slips" the video forward or backward, in effect trimming one end and extending the other simultaneously. This is useful, for example, if you finish building a timeline but decide you wish a clip started a few frames earlier.

In Slip Source mode, the monitors and controls look like Figure 3.78:



Figure 3.78: Slip Source Mode

You can also open four monitors in Slip Source mode. If you do this, you see the Slide mode button on the toolbar also turn on. This indicates that the selected clip, shown in the middle monitors, is in Slip Source mode, and the neighboring clips, shown in the monitors on the ends, are in Slide mode. This is the same when you open four monitors in Slide mode.

In Slip Source mode, the **Roll** and **Slide Edit** buttons in the **Editor Options** panel are on by default. These options allow you to perform the same options with the mouse as with the transport controls. **Roll** causes the mouse to behave like Slip Source when you click on a clip, and **Slide Edit** causes the mouse to behave like Trim Edit mode when you click on the trimming handle of a clip. To change these options, open the **Editor Options** panel by clicking on the **Options** button on the right side of the toolbar. See "Editor Options Panel" on page 93 for more information about this panel.

Following is an explanation of the controls in Slip Source mode:

Src In/Src Out Timecode	These boxes display the timecode on the source tape. This is different than timecode displays in the other editing modes, which display either the timecode of the timeline or the output tape.
Revert	Undoes changes and reverts to the properties set for the clip in the last saved version of the timeline.

132 Chapter 3 Slide Mode

Slide editing mode is designed to adjust cut edits. In Slide mode, you can extend the length of a clip, and the neighboring clip is automatically trimmed to compensate.

Figure 3.79 shows the monitors and controls in Slide mode.



Figure 3.79: Slide Mode

You can also open four monitors in Slide mode. If you do this, you see the Slip Source mode button on the toolbar also turn on. This indicates that the selected clip, shown in the middle monitors, is in Slip Source mode, and the neighboring clips, shown in the monitors on the ends, are in Slide mode. This is the same when you open four monitors in Slip Source mode.

When four monitors are open in Slide mode, the **Roll** and **Slide Edit** buttons in the **Editor Options** panel are on by default. These options allow you to perform the same options with the mouse as with the transport controls. **Roll** causes the mouse to behave like Slip Source when you click on a clip, and **Slide Edit** causes the mouse to behave like Trim Edit mode when you click on the trimming handle of a clip. To turn these options off, open the **Editor Options** panel by clicking on the **Options** button on the right side of the toolbar. See "Editor Options Panel" on page 93 for more information about this panel.

Following is an explanation of the controls in Slide edit mode:

Out/In Timecode	Displays the timecode of the last and first frames of the clips. To set a specific timecode as the last or first frame of one of the clips, type in the timecode and press <b>Enter</b> on your keyboard.
Revert	Undoes changes and reverts to the properties set for the clip in the last saved version of the timeline.



#### Transition Edit Mode

Transition Edit mode (**Trans Edit** on the button face) is used to adjust the beginning and ending points of transitions. Adjustable transitions, such as wipes and dissolves, automatically adjust in length to match the overlap of the two clips.

When the GlobeCaster Editor is in Transition Edit mode, it automatically goes to a four-monitor display. If you do not see frames from your clips displayed in all four monitors, click in the timeline on the second clip of the transition to load them into the monitors.

In Transition Edit mode, the **Lock Trans** button in the **Editor Options** panel is on by default. This locks the in and out points of a transition to the in and out points of a clip when you drag the trimming handles of the clip. So, if you make the overlap area of the clips shorter, the transition is also shorter. To turn this option off, open the **Editor Options** panel by clicking on the **Options** button on the right side of the toolbar. See "Editor Options Panel" on page 93 for more information about this panel.

Figure 3.80 shows the monitors and transport controls in Transition Edit mode.



Figure 3.80: Transition Edit Mode

Following is an explanation of the controls in Transition Edit mode:

Trn (Transition) Out	Displays the timecode for the first frame of the transition on the first clip.
Out	Displays the timecode for the last frame of the first clip.
Trn (Transition) In	Displays the timecode for the first frame of the second clip.
In	Displays the timecode for the last frame of the transition on the second clip.
Revert	Undoes changes and reverts to the properties set for the clip in the last saved version of the timeline.

134 )))) Chapter 3

T (Transition)Displays the length of the transition.Duration

**-/**+

Decreases/increases the length of the transition by 1 second.



## **Timeline Flattening**

Timeline flattening allows the user to compress the events on a timeline into one TM Clip event. You can select the whole timeline or only certain events to be flattened.

#### Flattening a Single Event

To flatten a single event, simply right-click on an event in the timeline and select **Flatten Event** from the menu. For instance, right-clicking on a dissolve event displays the popup menu shown in Figure 3.81.

Delete Event Delete Selected Events Snap
Select All Select Track Select None Invert Track Invert Selection Select From Here Select From Here on This Track
Effect Properties Replace with Dissolve Show filenames upon selection Flatten Event

Figure 3.81: Flatten Event

Selecting Flatten Event will compress everything found in the range of the dissolve event (Figure 3.82) and place the resulting flattened clip on the first track.



Figure 3.82: Selected Range

## **136** )))) Chapter 3

#### **Flattening Multiple Events**

Flattening multiple events is similar to flattening a single event.

First, select the events to be compressed (by holding the **Ctrl** key and left-clicking on each event). Flatten them by right-clicking on the timeline to display the following drop-down menu (Figure 3.83), and then select **Flatten Selected**.



Figure 3.83: Choosing Flatten Selected

Not only will the selected events be flattened, but everything in the range of those events will also be flattened, as shown as Figure 1.5. Each selected event will be replaced by its resulting flattened clip.



Figure 3.84: Selected Ranges

#### Flattening the Timeline

To flatten the entire timeline, simply right-click on the timeline as above and select **Flatten Timeline**. This will flatten the entire timeline into one TM Clip. This is especially useful if you want to export the entire timeline as an AVI clip.



#### Flattening Notes and Tips

Here is some information that will help you with your timeline flattening.

- Digitize any linear clips before flattening.
- There are only two video channels on the Time Machine, one of which is used to record the resulting clip. Thus, if there is a transition between two clips, one of the clips is recorded to a warp engine as if it were a ClipMem. The longer the transition, the more memory is required on a ClipMem. If there is not enough memory on a warp engine, then the transition will be split into multiple segments, resulting in more than one flattened clip.
- During the flattening process, you may see one of the Time Machine clips being played, this is just the Time Machine clip being recorded to a warp engine.
- There are eight channels of audio treated as four stereo pairs on a Time Machine. One stereo pair is used to record, so only three stereo pairs can be played during a flatten. An error message will be shown if more than three pairs is attempted.
- Flattening clips will result in generation loss. If digitized quality is an issue, only flatten those events that require flattening, rather than the entire time-line. This technique can be applied to those with limited memory resources as well.
- When flattening, an effect may get split. If it was a variable size effect, it can no longer be resized, nor should it be moved in order for it to look continuous after part of it has been flattened.
- All flattened clips are stored in the Time Machine and have the file structure:

#### Flat.timelinename.startpoint.duration

**138** Chapter 3

### **Digitizing With Time Machine**

This section of the chapter explains how the GlobeCaster Editor's digitizing functions work. If you have Time Machine installed, there are several ways to digitize clips. You can digitize clips on the timeline, or send clips to a queue to be digitized in a batch. The **Batch Digitize** window allows you to adjust settings, such as compression level and color correction, for individual or groups of clips.

You can also digitize your program out in the GlobeCaster Switcher by using the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel. See the *GlobeCaster Switcher Manual* for information on how to do this.

You can digitize WAV and AVI files by dragging them onto the timeline, or by adding them to the Batch Digitize list.

Each digitized clip has a default of 1 second of trim room at the head and tail of the clip. This is so you can make minor adjustments in the in and out points without having to re-digitize the clip from the source tape.

When you are working with non-linear clips, the GlobeCaster Editor automatically accounts for changes you make to the playback speed and loop count. For example, say you set the playback speed for a clip to play in reverse. When you scrub through that clip on the timeline, you see the end of the clip first. Then it plays back to the beginning of the clip as you scrub through the clip on the timeline. And, if you open an advanced editing mode, such as Trim Clip, what you see in the monitor labeled **First Frame, Selected Clip** is actually the last frame of the clip, since that is what you see first when the clip is played in reverse.

You can re-digitize a clip if you want to change its properties, such as the compression level used. You can, for example, initially digitize all your clips for a project at a high compression level, giving you smaller file sizes. Then, when you have built your timeline and know which clips you actually want to use, you can delete the extras and re-digitize the ones you want at a lower compression level for better image quality.



#### Where Are The Clips Saved?

**NOTE:** If you delete the clips from the Time Machine hard drives, the shortcuts in the bins will be useless unless you redigitize them. Don't make the mistake of thinking you have a copy of a clip saved in a bin. The picon in a bin is only a shortcut, as the clips are saved *only* on the Time Machine hard drives. Time Machine saves digitized clips to your dedicated Time Machine hard drives inside your GlobeCaster unit. You can also create shortcut picons for Time Machine clips and save them in any bin by dragging the clip picon into the bin.

For most practical purposes, the shortcut picons act just like clips. This is *not* true, however, when it comes to deleting the clips. You can delete shortcuts to the clips in the bins where they are located, but to delete the clips themselves you must navigate to the Time Machine hard drives.

You can access the Time Machine hard drives by parenting up through your bins. This allows you to delete clips or load clips directly from the hard drive. To access the Time Machine hard drives, do the following:

1. In one of the open bins on your screen, click the **A** button in the upper right corner of the bin (Figure 3.85).



Figure 3.85: The System Bin

This opens additional options for bin navigation.

2. Click on the **Parent** button until you get to the **System** bin.

You see four options in the system bin: **Desktop, Logical drives, Time Machine,** and **GlobeCaster** (previous figure).

3. Double-click on the Time Machine picon.

You see an icon of a book (Figure 3.86). This represents the "volume" of Time Machine you are using. Currently there is only one volume.



Figure 3.86: Volume Icon in Time Machine Bin

4. Double-click on the volume icon.

**NOTE:** You can save as many shortcuts to Time Machine clips in bins as you want. Multiple shortcuts can reference the same audio and video footage on the Time Machine hard drives. Each shortcut can contain different clip properties, such as in and out points, strobe rate, etc.

Chapter 3

**NOTE:** These clips are the actual audio and video data only. The Time Machine hard drives do not contain clip properties, such as in and out points, strobe rate, etc. These clip properties are saved in the shortcuts for the clips in the bins on your PC. You see a bin containing picons of your digitized clips (Figure 3.87).



Figure 3.87: Digitized Clips on Time Machine Hard Drives

To load your digitized clips into a monitor or onto the timeline, drag the picon from this bin to where you want to load it.

This is where you delete your clips from the Time Machine drives. To do this, right-click on a clip picon and choose **Delete** from the pop-up menu.

When you want to return to the bin you started from, click the Home button.

Digitizing A Clip On The Timeline To digitize a clip on the timeline, (left-)click on the clip to select it. Then, rightclick on the clip and choose **Digitize to Time Machine** from the pop-up menu, or click on the **Digitize** button on the toolbar. You see a horizontal bar go up and down in the picon for the clip, telling you that Time Machine is digitizing the clip. The bar containing the clip picon on the timeline turns dark blue, indicating it is digitized

You can select multiple clips to digitize on the timeline. There are two ways to do this. One is to hold down the **Control** key on your keyboard and click on the clips to select them. The other is to right-click on a clip and choose one of the select options, such as **Select All, Select Track, Select From Here**, etc., from the pop-up menu (see "Timeline Event Pop-Up Menu" on page 99 for information on all the selection options). Once you select the clips, digitize them the same way as single clips, by choosing **Digitize to Time Machine** from the pop-up menu, or by clicking on the **Digitize** button on the toolbar.


#### Selecting Clips For Batch Digitizing

There are three ways you can add clips to the Batch Digitize bin. You can select them from the timeline, you can use **AutoBatch** to automatically send them to the Batch Digitize bin as you log them, or you can drag picons from a bin into the Batch Digitize window **To do list**.

Sending your clips to the Batch Digitize window does not save them. To save them, you must open the Batch Digitize window and either digitize the clips or save the **To do list** before exiting the GlobeCaster Editor.

You can send clips from as many tapes as you want to the Batch Digitize window. Once you open that window, you can select all the clips from each tape by clicking on the tape name in the Tape List. Or, you can digitize the whole batch, and Time Machine prompts you to change tapes as needed.

#### Selecting Clips to Batch Digitize from the Timeline

To queue clips for batch digitizing from the timeline, select the clips you want to digitize. Do this by holding down the **Control** key on your keyboard and clicking on the clips you want, or by right-clicking on a clip and choosing one of the select options, such as **Select All** or **Select From Here**, from the pop-up menu. Then, right-click on one of the selected clips and choose **Add to Batch Digitize** from the pop-up menu.

### Using AutoBatch

To automatically send clips to the Batch Digitize bin as you log them, click on the **AutoBatch** button under the right monitor. Log your clips by marking the in and out points, and clicking the **New Clip** button under the right monitor between each clip.

### Dragging Picons to the To do list

When the Batch Digitize window is open (open it by clicking on the **Batch** button on the left side of the toolbar), you can add clips to the queue by dragging them from a bin to the **To do list**. You can also drag clips from the **To do list** to a bin to save a shortcut for that clip in the bin.

**Digitizing AVI** And WAV Files There are two ways you can digitize AVI and WAV files. You can drag an AVI or WAV file from the bin onto the timeline in the GlobeCaster Editor, and if you have Time Machine installed, it is instantly digitized. Or, you can add it to the **To do list** in the Batch Digitize window. Do this by clicking on the **Batch** button on the left side of the toolbar to open the Batch Digitize window, then either dragging the AVI or WAV file picon from a bin into the **To do list** or double-clicking on the picon.

142 Chapter 3

Dropping Video Files Into The Timeline When you drop video file (i.e. AVI, MOV, MP3) onto the timeline to digitize it, a new dialog box will be displayed allowing you to choose the quality settings.

Revert to Digit	tized Settings	
Compression 2	7	ĭ

Figure 3.88: Importing AVI Compression Settings

Use Default Compression Settings	Click this box to use the default compression settings. When this option is checked, the dialog box is greyed out.
Revert to Digitized Settings	Click this option to revert back to the original settings for compression.
Compression	Use this slider to alter the compression level for the video file. The higher the number, the less the quality will be.
Ok	Click <b>Ok</b> to save your settings and continue importing the video file.
Cancel	Cancels any settings you've made and does not import the video file.

Using The Batch Digitize Window Time Machine's batch digitizing function is controlled through the **Batch Digitize** window. In this window, you can set properties for individual clips and select clips to digitize in a batch.

Editor Manual



To access this window, click on the **Batch** button on the left side of the toolbar. The **Batch Digitize** window opens

			Tape List	t		Batch L	₋ist	Message	Area	
Globe Ci Total Ti Approx Spa Spa	Caste os Selected me Selected ce Required ce Available	n Batch Dig 0 00:00:00:00:00 0 6590464	Active Deck Status	Select Deselect Remove Se	All Land Land Land Land Land Land Land Land	Start Stop hage Tapes Save Lit	Clip %s:		Store digitized: In Bin In Timeline Save Now	Editor
Folder Nam	e.								1	Parunt A X
Icon	Select	State	Name	Таре	Volume	Start	Length	End Components	Compression	User

Figure 3.89: The Batch Digitize Window

Here's how the functions in these windows work:

Clips Selected	Displays the number of clips selected in the <b>To do</b> <b>list</b> . A clip is selected if the square button in the <b>Select</b> column is on (blue), and is not selected if this button is off (gray). Select clips by clicking on this button. Or, select all clips by clicking on the <b>Select All</b> button. Or, select all clips from a single tape by clicking on the name of the tape in the Tape List.
Total Time Selected	Displays the total length of the clips selected in the <b>To do list</b> .
Approx Space Required	Displays the approximate amount of space (in bytes) on your hard drive that the selected clips require.
Space Available	Displays the amount of available space (in bytes) on your hard drive.
Tape List	Lists the tapes from which the selected clips are taken. To select all clips from a single tape for digitizing, click on the name of the tape in the Tape List.
Select All	Selects all the clips in the <b>To do list</b> .
Deselect All	Deselects all the clips in the <b>To do list</b> .
<b>Remove Selected</b>	Removes the selected clip from the <b>To do list</b> .
Active Deck Status	Displays messages, such as <b>Playing</b> or <b>Cueing</b> , regarding the status of the active deck.

# **144** )))) Chapter 3

Start	Begins digitizing the selected clips.
Stop	Halts the digitizing process.
Manage Tapes	Tells Time Machine which tape is currently in a source. This allows you to tell Time Machine that a new tape is in the deck before the tape is requested. To do this, click on the button. Select the deck you want from the pop-up menu. Another pop-up menu appears. Select the new tape you just placed in the selected deck.
Batch List Picon	This picon represents the Batch List (the clips listed in the <b>To do list</b> bin). You can save the list and digitize some or all of the clips later by dragging this picon into a bin. When you are ready to work in it again, double-click on it and it loads into the <b>To do list</b> .
	To set the image for this picon, select one (make sure only one clip is selected) clip in the <b>To do</b> <b>list</b> . Then right-click on this picon, and choose <b>Set Picon to selected clip</b> from the pop-up menu.
	As you digitize the batch, you see a white status bar go up and down in this picon until the digitizing is complete.
Save List	Saves the list of clips in the <b>To do list</b> so you can return to it later. The default bin these lists are saved in is <b>GlobeCaster\Bins\Clips</b> . The picon has a GlobalStreams logo (unless you set a picon), and the default name is <b>Batch</b> followed by a four- digit number. The file extension is .pbl (The GlobeCaster Editor batch list). To open a list saved in a bin, open the <b>Batch Digitize</b> window and double-click on the picon. The list is loaded as the current <b>To do list</b> .
Clip %	A visual status bar that indicates how far the digitizing of a clip has proceeded. The bar turns green from the left.
Total %	A visual status bar that indicates how far the entire digitizing process (of all selected clips) has proceeded. The bar turns green from the left.

Editor Manual

	GlobeCaster 🗮 145
In Bin/In Timeline	Use these buttons in conjunction with the <b>Save</b> <b>Now</b> button to designate where picons of digitized clips are saved.
	(All digitized clips are actually saved on the Time Machine hard drives, but picons representing shortcuts to these clips can be saved in any bin. So, what you are actually designating with these buttons is where the shortcuts are saved. In practice these picons behave as if they were the actual clips, except that if you want to delete the clip, and not just the shortcut, you must navigate to the Time Machine hard drives to do so. For information on how to do this, see "Where Are The Clips Saved?" on page 139.)
	In Bin stores picons of the clips in the bin designated for Unsaved TM in the Global Settings panel. The default is GlobeCaster\Bins\Clips. For more information on how to set paths in the Global Settings panel, see the "Using Configure Panels" chapter in the GlobeCaster User Guide.
	<b>In Timeline</b> places picons of the digitized clips directly in the timeline you are building. If you already have a timeline loaded, you are prompted to save.
	After choosing <b>In Bin</b> or <b>In Timeline</b> , click the <b>Save Now</b> button.
	You can save clip picons to both the timeline and the bin by choosing first one and clicking <b>Save</b> <b>Now</b> , and then choosing the other and clicking <b>Save Now</b> .
Save Now	Used in conjunction with the <b>In Bin</b> or <b>In Timeline</b> buttons (see explanation above).
Message area, OK	Displays messages regarding the status of the digitizing process. If there are errors, a message is displayed here. If the message is too long to see all of it, right-click on it and it is displayed in a popup window. Click <b>OK</b> to clear the message area.
_, ?, X	As in other Windows applications, $\_$ minimizes the application, $?$ opens a help window, and $X$ closes the application.



Editor

Closes the **Batch Digitize** window and returns you to the GlobeCaster Editor interface. If you want to save your **To do list**, click **Save List** before clicking on this button to exit the **Batch Digitize** window. Otherwise, when you restart or reset GlobeCaster the **To do list** will be lost.

**To Do List** Across the bottom portion of the **Batch Digitize** window is the **To do list**. This not only acts as a bin, but also allows you to set certain features for individual clips. Here's how to use it:

As in other bins in GlobeCaster, right-clicking in a blank area of the **To do list** in the **Batch Digitize** window brings up a pop-up menu. The items on this menu allow you to manage the items in your bins. For information on how to use bin functions, see the "The GlobeCaster Interface" chapter in the *GlobeCaster User Guide*.

Α

Х

Toggles the navigation buttons (**Back, Forward, Home,** and **Close**) and long path name on and off. Note that the **Parent** button, which takes you up one level in the directory, is always available, whether **A** is toggled on or off. Right-clicking the **A** button brings up a pop-up menu with options that change how picons are displayed in the bin. These options are **Large, Small, List, Detail,** and **Clip**.

**Large**: Displays the picons at a larger size.

Small: Displays picons at a smaller size.

List: Displays the picons and their names.

**Detail**: Displays the picons and the following information: **Name, Size, Type, Modified,** and **Attrib** (attributes).

**Clip**: Displays the picons and the following information: **Name, Length, Source In** (in point), **Source Out** (out point), and **Comments**.

*NOTE*: If some of the fields of information in the bin do not appear in the display as you change the type of view, you can recover those fields by clicking the **Parent** button to go up one level in the directory, and then reopening the **To do list** folder.

Closes the bin. Open a new bin by right-clicking in the empty space on the screen and choosing **New Bin** from the pop-up menu.

GlobeCaster

Parent	Takes you one level higher in the directory. If you click on this, you see the following folders, <b>To do list, Tapes,</b> and <b>Volumes</b> .
	<b>To do list</b> is the list of clips waiting to be digitized. It is the default folder that is open when you open the Batch Digitize window.
	The <b>Tapes</b> folder contains a folder for each tape, and clips from each tape. This allows you to quickly find and digitize clips from a specific tape.
	Volumes is for a future enhancement.
Path box	Shows exactly where on your hard drive a bin is found. Navigate through bins by typing a new path in this box.
Back	Takes you to the previous bin. If you haven't opened any bins before the current one, this is grayed out. Right-clicking on the <b>Back</b> button brings up a navigation history pop-up menu for navigating without intervening stops.
Forward	Takes you to the bin that you navigated to after the current one, when navigating through a series of bins. If you haven't opened any bins since you opened the current bin, this tool does not function. Right-clicking on the <b>Forward</b> button brings up a navigation history pop-up menu for navigating without intervening stops.
Home	Opens the bin that was open when a layout was last saved. There can be as many different <b>Home</b> bins as there are layouts for each application.
Close	Closes the bin. Another bin is opened in this space by right-clicking in the space and choosing <b>New Bin</b> from the pop-up menu. Or you can expand another bin into the empty space by dragging it out to a new size.
Icon	Displays a picon of the clip. Drag the picon to a bin to save a shortcut for the clip.

5

148 ))))	Chapter 3
----------	-----------

Select, State Click on the square button in the Select column to select whether or not a clip is included in the batch to be digitized. If the square is dark blue, the clip is selected for digitizing; if the square is gray, the clip is not selected for digitizing. Clicking on this square also toggles the status of the clip in the State column between an active and inactive one. If the clip is a linear clip, its **State** toggles between Waiting and Ignored. If the state is Waiting, it means the clip is waiting to be digitized, and it will be included in the batch when you click Start. If the state is **Ignored**, the clip will be omitted from the batch. Sometimes you will want to re-digitize clips that have already been digitized in order to change their settings. If the clip has already been digitized, its State toggles between Digitized and Rescheduled. If the state is **Digitized**, GlobeCaster recognizes that the clip has already been digitized, and it will be omitted from the next batch. If the state is Rescheduled, the clip has been scheduled to be redigitized, and it will be included in the next batch. NOTE: If you are re-digitizing a clip and you do not want to overwrite the previously digitized version, be sure to change the name of the clip before you redigitize it. Name Displays the name of the clip. Displays the name of the tape from which the clip is Tape taken. Volume Indicates the Time Machine "volume" number where the clip is saved. Currently there is only one Time Machine volume. Start Displays the starting timecode of the clip. Length Displays the length of the clip in timecode. End Displays the ending timecode of the clip. Components Allows you to select the components you want:

Video, Audio 1 & 2, or Audio 3 & 4.

Editor Manual



Compression	Allows you to select the relative level of compression for the clip. To do this, click on the button. A pop-up menu appears. <b>Default</b> , the automatically selected setting, gives the highest image quality. Moving from <b>Default</b> toward <b>6</b> gives you progressively more compression and, thus, less quality. You can set a different compression level for each clip to be batch digitized.
	The compression ratio can also be changed in the <b>Digitize Settings</b> panel. Access this panel by clicking on the <b>Configure</b> button on the GlobeCaster Editor toolbar and selecting <b>Digitize Settings</b> from the popup menu. For information on this panel, see the "Using Configure Panels" chapter in the <i>GlobeCaster User Guide</i> .
	<i>NOTE:</i> The GlobeCaster Time Machine uses wavelet compression to digitize video. Wavelet compression offers better video quality for less hard drive space than the standard M-JPEG compression, which most other non-linear editing systems use. A compression ratio of about 5:1 with Time Machine is visually unchanged, and is roughly equivalent to a 1.5:1 ratio on an M-JPEG system. Another advantage of wavelet compression is that you won't see any digital artifacts, such as the pixel blocks that may show up on M-JPEG compressed video. Wavelet compression, even at high compression ratios, retains the look of analog tape.
User	Enter a user name for the clip here. This is convenient if your Time Machine is used by more than one person, and you want to keep track of your digitized clips. To enter a user name, click once on the clip to select it, then click in the <b>User</b> box. A cursor appears and you can type in the name.
Project	Enter the name of the project which the clip is part of. To do so, click once on the clip to select it, then click in the <b>Project</b> box. A cursor appears and you can type in the name of the project.
Comments	Enter comments here. To do so, click once on the clip to select it, then click in the <b>Comments</b> box. A cursor appears and you can type in your comments.
Size	Displays the size (in bytes) of the clip after it is digitized. This changes according to the compression level you choose.

Chapter 3

Rename/Delete Pop-Up Menu You can use the Rename/Delete pop-up menu to rename or delete a clip. To do this, select the clip. Then, right-click in the row of the selected clip. The Rename/Delete pop-up menu appears.



Figure 3.90: The Rename/Delete Pop-Up Menu

Select the desired option from the pop-up menu. If you select **Delete**, the clip is deleted from the **To do list** bin, but not from other bins where you have saved it. If you select **Rename**, the yellow band across the row of the clip you selected turns purple, and a cursor appears at the beginning of the clip name. Type in a new name for the clip and press **Enter**.

## Digitizing CD Audio Tracks

You can digitize a CD audio track to the Time Machine by navigating to the CD drive on the host PC and dragging a .CDA (CD Audio) file onto the timeline. Figure 3.91 illustrates this process.

D:\  Parent   Home   Back   Forwar	
Track01.ci Track02.ci Track03.ci	Track04.ct
Track05.ct Track06.ct Track07.ct	Track08.cl
Track09.ci	Track08.ci

Figure 3.91: Dragging a CD Audio File From the Bin

When the .CDA file is dropped onto the timeline, the **Track Name Search Panel** is automatically displayed allowing you to search for the correct name of the track. Once you have accepted the name (or have chosen your own) Editor will start digitizing the file. This process may take several minutes during which most of the buttons will become disabled.



Track Name Search Panel Before an CD Audio file is digitized, you have the option of searching for the correct name of the track using this panel.

Track Name Search Track Search Sites ✓ freedb.freedb.org	
www.google.com	
URL: www.google.com Add Search Site	
Track Matches Enjoy The Silence ✓ Enjoy the Silence	
Name: Enjoy the Silence	
Search complete  Accept Name Cancel Search Cancel Import	ļ

Figure 3.92: Track Name Search Panel

Track Search Sites	Lists all of the URLs you can search. Click on the site(s) you wish to use.
URL:	Type in the name of the URL you wish to search.
Add Search Site	Click on this button to add the URL to the <b>Track</b> Search Site list.
Don't Search	Clicking this box will skip this panel the next time you import a .CDA file. Keep in mind that selecting this item will prevent this panel from displaying again. Holding down the SHIFT button while dropping the file onto the timeline will display this panel again.
Automate Search	Clicking this box will automatically search the site that you have selected from previous searches the next time you import a .CDA track. If the search returns conflicting track names, it will allow you to select from the choices (displayed in the <b>Track</b> <b>Matches</b> section); otherwise the panel isn't displayed. Holding down the SHIFT button while dropping the file onto the timeline will display this panel again.

**152** )))) Chapter 3

Name	Displays the name that will be used for this track. You may edit this name or select it from the <b>Track</b> <b>Matches</b> section.
Status Box	Box that displays the current status of the search process.
Accept Name	Click on this button to accept the name of the track.
Cancel Search	Click on this button to cancel the search process.
Cancel Import	Click on this button to canel importing (and digitizing) the track file.



## Exporting Time Machine Clips with Audio Compression

On the timeline of a digitized clip, right-click to display the context menu. From this menu, select **Export to AVI**. The **Audio/Video Export Configuration** panel will display.

Audio/Video Export Configuration			
File Name C:\Dropbox\Expo	rt001.avi Browse		
File Format AVI (Win	dows Movie)		
Video Codec Uncor	npressed AVI file Configure		
Width 720			
Height 486			
	ire that the dimensions be a multiple of 4		
Video Frame Rate 29.9	7 frames/second Full Frame		
Maintain Aspect Ratio	Use Square Pixels		
Crop to DVD Size	Reverse Fields		
Audio Format/Codec 🛛 📗	Uncompressed (PCM)		
Audio Format Attribute 📒	48 kHz		
ГОК	Cancel		

Figure 3.93: Audio/Video Export Configuration Panel

File Name	Enter the name of the file you wish to export. You may click on the Browse button to popup the standard Windows® browser window.
File Format	Drop-down menu that contains the various file formats in which to which you may export.
Video Codec	Drop-down menu that contains compression schemes associated with your compute. Each computer will vary in the contents of this menu.
Configure	Certain codecs are configurable and have a configuration window associated with them. This button will popup the Configuration window if the currently selected codec is configurable.
Width	Adjusts the width. Either click in the value box or drag the slider to increase/decrease to change the value.
Height	Adjusts the height. Either click in the value box or drag the slider to increase/decrease to change the value.

# **154** )))) Chapter 3

Video Frame Rate	Drop-down menu that allows you to select the frame rate of the video exported to the AVI file.
Maintain Aspect Ratio	When selected, locks the width and height adjustments together to maintain an even aspect of width and height.
Use Square Pixels	When selected, changes the pixels from rectangle to square. This is typically used when exporting AVIs to the Web.
Crop to DVD Size	When selected, removes the first two lines and the last four lines of the video frames creating a 720x480 resolution (for NTSC).
<b>Reverse Fields</b>	When selected, reverses the field order of every frame.
Audio Format/Codec	Drop-down menu that allows you to select the audio format. Each computer will vary in the contents of this menu.
Audio Format Attribute	Drop-down menu that is dependent upon the audio format that you choose.
Ok	Accepts the changes you've made and exports the file.
Cancel	Cancels the exportation process.



## Animating Audio On The Timeline

The timeline audio tracks and pop-up menus give you the ability to adjust audio levels while working in the timeline. This is an easy way to sync the audio levels with the clips on your timeline.

When you first place clips on the timeline, only video tracks are visible (Figure 3.94).



Figure 3.94: Video Tracks on the Timeline

To open the audio tracks for a video track, click on the plus sign next to the name of the video track, or right-click in a blank spot in the timeline and choose **Expand Tree** or **Expand All** from the pop-up menu. You see two audio tracks for each video track (Figure 3.95).

	Ì	01:00:00:00 01:	00:05:04 X
Audio Tracks	- Video 1	Live 07.02.2001_14.42.00	
	+ Audio 1	Live_07.02.2001_14.42.00	
	+ - Audio 2	Live_07.02.2001_14.42.00	
	- Video 2	Live 07.02.2001 15.03.35	
	+ Audio 1	Live_07.02.2001_15.03.35	
	+-Audio 2	Live_07.02.2001_15.03.35	

Figure 3.95: Video and Audio Tracks on the Timeline

In addition to the audio tracks, which can be used to adjust the length of the audio clip, there is a Level track for each audio track. The Level track can be used to animate the volume level of the audio. To open the Level track, click on the plus

156 ))) Chapter 3

sign next to the name of the audio track, or right-click in a gray area of the timeline and choose **Expand All** from the pop-up menu.

		01:00:00:00	01:00:05:04 X
Keyframe	Video 1 Audio 1 Level	Live 07.02.2001_14.42.00	
Level Tracks	- Audio 2 Level	Live_07.02.2001_14.42.00	
	Video 2	Live_07.02.2001_15.03.3	5

Figure 3.96: Video, Audio, and (Audio) Level Tracks on the Timeline

To hide the tracks, click on the minus sign next to the name of the track. This hides the child tracks. In other words, if you click on the minus sign next to Audio 1, its child Level track is hidden. If you click on the minus sign next to Video 1, its two audio tracks and two levels tracks are all hidden.

Right-clicking in the Level track brings up the Timeline pop-up menu (see "Timeline Event Pop-Up Menu" on page 99 for information on how to use this menu). The following options allow you to adjust the height of the Level tracks so you can edit precisely.

Halve track height	Displays the selected audio track at half its current height.
Reset track height	Resets the selected audio track height to its original height.
Double track height	Displays the selected audio track at twice its current height. (You may want to do this if you want to drag a level all the way down to Off. Or, you can right-click on a keyframe to open the <b>Edit Key</b> panel and use the slider to set the level to off. See the following section, "Edit Key Panel," for more information on this.)

Adjustments to the audio tracks are made by clicking-and-dragging on the audio clips or the audio keyframes, or via several pop-up menus. The pop-up menus are described in the following sections.

Editor Manual

GlobeCaster

**Decibel Level** When you left-click on a keyframe control knob (Figure 3.97) on a Level track, a box appears that indicates the decibel level of the audio in that track.



Figure 3.97: Decibel Level

0 dB represents an unchanged audio level. Audio engineers may find it helpful to know that the settings in the Level track act as an attenuator, and every -6 dB halves the audio level (-6 dB is half the original level, -12 dB is a quarter, -18 dB is an eighth, etc.).

You can change the decibel level by dragging the keyframe down, or by typing in a number in the Edit Key pop-up box (see following section). You can also drag keyframes left or right, except for the beginning and ending keyframes, which are fixed at the ends of the audio clip.

Chapter 3 158

**Edit Key Panel** 

The **Edit Key** panel allows you to fine tune the volume levels of the audio tracks. To access it, right-click on a keyframe. Select **Edit Key** from the pop-up menu (see the following section, "Audio Tracks Pop-Up Menu," for information on how to use this menu). The **Edit Key** panel appears.



Figure 3.98: The Edit Key Panel

The **Edit Key** panel is a floating window, so you can drag it where you want it on the screen.

Here's how to use the **Edit Key** panel:

Delete Event	Deletes the selected keyframe. However, because each audio track must have a beginning and ending keyframe, you cannot delete these keyframes.
Linear	The default mode, this makes the transition from one keyframe to the next a straight line.



Figure 3.99: Keyframes Set to Linear

This means the audio level changes at a constant rate from one keyframe to the next.

Editor Manual



**Cubic** Makes the transition from one keyframe to the next a curved line.



Figure 3.100: Keyframes Set to Cubic

This "rounds out" the transitions between keyframes by varying the rate at which the audio level changes.

Hold

Maintains the value of the previous keyframe until the next keyframe.



Figure 3.101: Keyframes Set to Hold

This means the audio level jumps from the setting of one keyframe to the setting of the next.

Decibel SliderAdjusts the decibel level of the selected keyframe. 0<br/>dB represents an unchanged audio level. The<br/>settings in the Level track act as an attenuator, and<br/>every -6dB halves the audio level (-6 dB is half the<br/>original level, -12 dB is a quarter, -18 dB is an<br/>eighth, etc.)TIP: To turn the volume Off at the selected

keyframe, drag the slider all the way to the left. This may be easier than dragging the keyframe to the bottom of the track on the timeline.

**Event Value** Displays the decibel level of the selected keyframe. To set this level precisely, click on this box and type in a number.

0 dB represents an unchanged audio level. The settings in the Level track act as an attenuator, and every -6dB halves the audio level (-6 dB is half the original level, -12dB is a quarter, -18 dB is an eighth, etc.)

160 )))) Chapter 3

**Time Slider** and Timecode and Timecode The timecode of the location of the keyframe on the timeline is displayed in the timecode box. It can be adjusted with the slider, or by typing a number into the box and pressing **Enter** on your keyboard. You cannot, however, move the beginning and ending keyframes with this, as they must match the length of the audio clip.

#### **Animate Level Pop-Up Menu** The Animate Level pop-up menu has options that let you add keyframes to the audio level tracks or automatically create dips or fade ins and outs. To access this menu, right-click on a keyframe in the audio level tracks. A pop-up menu appears that is similar to the Audio Tracks pop-up menu, except it has options on the bottom of the list for adjusting the audio levels (Figure 3.102).



Figure 3.102: The Animate Level Pop-Up Menu

The Animate Level pop-up menu works the same as the Audio Tracks pop-up menu ("Keyframe Menu" on page 101). You can also right-click on an audio event or an audio level track to access a slightly different Animate Level pop-up menu.



## Mixing Audio

In addition to adjusting the level of audio tracks on the timeline, with GlobeCaster's optional audio system you can mix your audio sources. The GlobeCaster Editor's audio controls are designed for post-production work, while the GlobeCaster Switcher's Audio Mixer is designed for live audio mixing. Some audio controls in the GlobeCaster Editor appear on the toolbar. Other adjustments can be made in the **Tape Audio Properties** panel, the **Clip Audio Properties** panel and the **Equalizer** panel for each channel.

Audio Controls The Audio Monitor Controls on the toolbar are to the right of the Editing Controls. These controls adjust the monitor audio only, and do not affect the program out audio.



Figure 3.103: The Audio Monitor Controls

Here's what these controls do:

Monitor Slider	Controls the volume on the monitor outputs.
VU Meter	Mimics an LED level readout.
Mute Button	Turns off the volume for the monitors.

Tape Audio Properties Panel The **Tape Audio Properties** panel allows you to adjust your audio sources for a tape. The settings you adjust are applied to all clips from that tape, unless you set properties for individual clips in the **Clip Audio Properties** panel (see "Clip Audio Properties" on page 164 for information on how to use this panel).

Be sure to set the audio properties *before* you log clips. Changing the properties does not affect clips that have already been logged.

To access the Tape Audio Properties panel, do the following:

1. Click on the **Tape Name** button in the Main Controls in the toolbar (Figure 3.104).

Timeline	Track 1
Recorder	00:09:18;20
Source	
Reel2	Stopped

Figure 3.104: The Tape Name Button



2. Choose **Tape Properties** from the pop-up menu.

The **Tape Properties** panel appears in the upper left of your screen (Figure 3.105).

Tape Properties
Reel1 Recordable
Tape Name
Name
Value
Delete
Default settings for new clips from this tape Use Video
Tape Color Correction Setup Use
NLR Color Correction Setup Use

Figure 3.105: The Tape Properties Panel

3. Click on the **Audio Properties** button.





The **Tape Audio Properties** panel appears (Figure 3.106).

Figure 3.106: The Tape Audio Properties Panel

Here's how to use the panel:

Use Source	These buttons, <b>A1, A2, A3,</b> and <b>A4</b> , select which source channel is used. They can be mixed to record channels. Turn off all these buttons if you want to use video only from a tape. With these buttons off, all clips are added to the timeline without audio tracks.
Trim	A master gain control for the input. It is used to calibrate the input using reference tone levels.
Send Left	Controls the level of the left channel. Used in conjunction with external audio processing systems.
Send Right	Controls the level of the right channel. Used in conjunction with external audio processing systems.
EQ	Opens the <b>Equalizer</b> panel (see "Equalizer Panel" on page 165 for information on how to use this panel) for the channel.
Mute	No function for this panel.
Pan	Controls the left-right output of the audio track.
Level	Controls the actual level of the audio.

164 Chapter 3

**Animate** No function for this panel.

**Clip Audio Properties** The **Clip Audio Properties** panel allows you to adjust your audio sources for individual clips. To set audio properties for all clips from a tape, use the Tape Audio Properties Panel (see "Tape Audio Properties Panel" on page 161 for information on how to use this panel).

To access it, click on the **Clip Props** button in the Clip Controls on the left end of the toolbar. Or, right-click either in a Level track or on an audio clip in an Audio track and choose **Properties** from the pop-up menu. All three of these actions bring up the **Clip Main Properties** panel (see "Clip Main Properties Panel" on page 75). On this panel, click on the panel button in the upper left corner that says **Clip Main Properties**, and choose **Clip Audio Properties** from the pop-up menu.



Figure 3.107: The Clip Audio Properties Panel

Here's how to use the panel:

Use Source These buttons, A1, A2, A3, and A4, select which source channel is played. They can be mixed to record channels. Turning these buttons on or off also turns them on or off on the Clip Main Properties panel, and vice versa. (See "Clip Main Properties Panel" on page 75 for information on this panel.)

GlobeCaster

**Trim** A master gain control for the input. It is used to calibrate the input using reference tone levels.

If you look at a digitized clip's properties, you will see an additonal label in this area to indicate that the trim knobs only work when redigitizing the clip.



Figure 3.108: Trim Knobs For Digitized Clips

The trim knobs have no effect during clip playback.

- Send LeftControls the level of the left channel. Used in<br/>conjunction with external audio processing systems.Send RightControls the level of the right channel. Used in
  - conjunction with external audio processing systems.
- EQ Opens the Equalizer panel (see following section) for the channel.
- Mute Mutes the input.
- **Pan** Controls the left-right output of the audio track.
- **Level** Controls the actual level of the audio.
- Animate Allows the level of the audio track to be controlled in the timeline. Turn this on by clicking on the button. A Level track appears below each Audio track on the timeline. In this track you can add keyframes and adjust their positions, creating dips and fade ins or outs (see "Animating Audio On The Timeline" on page 155 for information on how to do this).

If this light is not on, the levels set in the Levels track on the timeline for that channel are ignored. This means you can experiment with the levels, and you can turn off **Animate** without losing your track changes.

**Equalizer Panel** The **Equalizer** panel for each channel controls a three-band parametric equalizer. To access it to adjust settings for all clips from a tape (from the **Tape Properties** panel), do the following:

## **166** )))) Chapter 3

1. Click on the **Tape Name** button in the Main Controls in the toolbar (Figure 3.109).

Timeline	Track 1
Recorder	00:09:18;20
Source	
Reel2	Stopped

Figure 3.109: The Tape Name Button

2. Choose **Tape Properties** from the pop-up menu.

The **Tape Properties** panel appears in the upper left of your screen (Figure 3.110).

Tape Properties
Reel1 Recordable Tape Name
Name
Value
Delete
Use Video Audio Properties
Tape Color Correction Setup Use
NER COLO CONTECTION J SELEP [Ose]

Figure 3.110: The Tape Properties Panel

3. Click on the **Audio Properties** button.

Editor Manual





The Tape Audio Properties panel appears (Figure 3.111).

Figure 3.111: The Tape Audio Properties Panel

4. Click on the **EQ** button for the desired channel.

The **Equalizer** panel appears.

You can also access the **Equalizer** panel to adjust settings for a single clip (from the **Clip Audio Properties** panel). To do this, click on the **Clip Props** button in the Clip Controls on the left end of the toolbar. Or, right-click either in a Level track or on an audio clip in an Audio track and choose **Properties** from the pop-up menu. All three of these actions bring up the **Clip Main Properties** panel (see "Clip Main Properties Panel" on page 75 for details on this panel). On this panel, click on the panel button in the upper left corner that says **Clip Main Properties** and choose **Clip Audio Properties** from the pop-up menu. The **Clip Audio Properties** panel

## **168** )))) Chapter 3

appears. Click on the  $\mathbf{EQ}$  button for the desired channel to open the **Equalizer** panel. It appears in the upper right corner of the screen.

Channel 1 E	Q Settings		X
High	Gain 📃	0.0	
Flat	Freq 🦳	10000.0	
	Q 🗖	6.00	
Mid	Gain 📃	0.0	
Flat	Freq 📃	1000.0	
	Q 🔳	6.00	
Low	Gain 📃	0.0	
Flat	Freq 🗖	166.0	
	Q 🔳	6.00	
Respons			
20 Hz	Frequency	20 kHz	

Figure 3.112: The Equalizer Panel

Changes you make are applied to the selected channel when you close this panel. Here's how to use the panel:

GlobeCaster 에 169

High/Mid/Low	Determines the settings for each range of the equalizer. Clicking on the button under these words brings up a pop-up menu with the options <b>Flat</b> , <b>Notch, Peak, High Shelf</b> (for the <b>High</b> range), and <b>Low Shelf</b> (for the <b>Low</b> range).
	<b>Flat</b> doesn't make any modification to the sound. This is the default setting.
	<b>Notch</b> cuts (lowers) the selected frequency (-14dB) at the selected Q (.26-5.00).
	<b>Peak</b> boosts (raises) or cuts (lowers) the selected frequency (+/-14dB) at the selected Q (.26-5.00).
	<b>High Shelf</b> and <b>Low Shelf</b> set an upper or lower limit to the frequencies passed through the mixer.
	The setting you choose here determines which, if any, slider frequencies on the right side of the panel can be adjusted. If you select <b>Flat</b> , for example, none of the sliders can be adjusted. If you select <b>Notch</b> , you can adjust <b>Freq</b> and <b>Q</b> . If you select Peak, you can adjust <b>Gain</b> , <b>Freq</b> , and <b>Q</b> . And if you select <b>High Shelf</b> or <b>Low Shelf</b> , you can adjust <b>Gain</b> , <b>Freq</b> , and <b>Slope</b> , which replaces <b>Q</b> .
Gain	Sets the amount of EQ boost or cut to the frequencies in the selected range.
Freq (Frequency)	Sets the center frequency that the setting is applied to. This frequency is at the top of the <b>Peak</b> or at the bottom of the <b>Notch</b> , or set at the <b>High Shelf</b> or <b>Low Shelf</b> level.
Q	Sets the bandwidth of the EQ effect. In other words, it determines the range of frequencies around the selected frequency that are affected. A high value causes a very sharp drop-off before or after the selected frequency, and a low Q value causes the EQ to affect a larger range of frequencies around the selected frequency.

**170** Chapter 3

## Using Options And Applications Buttons

Located on the GlobeCaster Editor toolbar are buttons that allow you to control the layout of the interface, access the vector scope/waveform monitor, access settings panels, and close the GlobeCaster Editor and open other GlobeCaster applications. The following sections explain the functions of these buttons.

**Options** The **Options** buttons are the gray buttons on the right side of the toolbar. **Buttons** 



Figure 3.113: The Options Buttons

Here's what the **Options** buttons do:

Top Bins	Toggles on and off the display of bins you have open at the top of the screen. When you open extra monitors, they replace the display of these bins. To see the bins again, click on <b>Top Bins</b> .
Btm (Bottom) Bins	Toggles on and off the display of bins you have open at the bottom of the screen. When you click on this button, the timeline shrinks and a bin appears on each side of it. Click this button again to close the bins and expand the timeline.
Scope	Opens the vector scope/waveform monitor, if you have the ClipGrab card. See the following section for information on how to operate it.
Options	Opens the <b>Editor Options</b> panel, where you can set properties for working with timelines. See "Editor Options Panel" on page 93 for information on how to use this panel.
Configure	Brings up a pop-up list of the configure panels: <b>Digitize Settings</b> (if Time Machine is installed), <b>Installed Cards, Keyer Settings, Color Correction,</b> <b>ProColor Correction, GPI Settings, Serial Devices,</b> <b>Input Sources, Input Settings, Output Settings,</b> and <b>Global Settings</b> . VTRs are configured in the <b>Serial</b> <b>Devices</b> configure panel. For a comprehensive explanation of these panels, see the "Using Configure Panels" chapter in the <i>GlobeCaster User</i> <i>Guide</i> .

**Vector Scope** The vector scope/waveform monitor analyzes details of the internal signal waveforms. It is available if you have a ClipGrab card installed.



The GlobeCaster vector scope/waveform monitor is useful for analyzing picture content information, such as color correction, setup level, and peak signal levels, but not timing information. Because the internal signals in GlobeCaster are digital, there is no viewable timing data for the vector scope/waveform monitor to display.

To access the scope, click on the **Scope** button in the gray **Options Buttons** on the toolbar. The vector scope appears (Figure 3.114).



Figure 3.114: The Vector Scope

The scope can also be accessed from the GlobeCaster Switcher by clicking on the **Outputs** button above the Program monitor and choosing **Scope** from the pop-up menu. When accessed from the GlobeCaster Switcher, the layout of the scope is slightly different than when accessed from the GlobeCaster Editor, but they function the same way.

To turn the scope on, click the **Run** button on the left side of the scope. When this button is on, the scope updates as the video plays. If this button is not on, the scope displays color information from a frozen frame. This can be useful if you want to look at the information from a particular section of video. To do this, click the **Run** button off at the desired point, and it freezes the scope output.

When viewing the scope, the letters stand for the following colors:

R RedMg MagentaB BlueCy CyanG Green



## Yl Yellow

Colors show up on the scope as illuminated areas in a position on the display that is proportional to their color. The distance of the illuminated area from the center of the scope is proportional to the saturation, and the position in the arc of the circle (at which degree it shows up) is proportional to the hue. White and black both show up as dots in the center of the scope.

To close the scope, click on the **Scope** button in the **Options** buttons on the toolbar.

Here's how to use the options on the scope:

Program (Source Button)	Selects the source of the video to be analyzed. Click on the button and select the desired source from the pop-up menu. The options are: <b>Program, Preview, Input 1-Input 8</b> . The default is <b>Program</b> .
Run	Turns the scope on. Click this button if you want the scope to update as video plays. If this button is off, the scope analyzes a frozen frame.
Field 1, Field 2	Selects which video field of each frame, <b>Field 1</b> or <b>Field 2</b> , is analyzed. The button displays the field currently selected. To switch to the other field, click on the button. It toggles to the other field. For more information on video fields, see "Field" in the glossary of the <i>GlobeCaster User Guide</i> .
75% Gain	Allows PAL users to adjust 100% color values to 75% color values.

Editor Manual

GlobeCaster (173

Vector Scope Click this button to choose from the following types of scopes: Vector Scope, Y Waveform, Cb Waveform, Cr Waveform, or Parade. The default is Vector Scope.

Vector Scope: Analyzes color information.



Figure 3.115: The Vector Scope, Analyzing Color Bars

With the color bars loaded, the dots line up into boxes. The dots are sharp points, indicating the source is a sharp signal. For the color bars, hazy, scattered dots indicate the signal has a lot of noise. For other images, which don't have only pure colors as the color bars do, a pattern of scattered dots is normal.





## Y Waveform: Analyzes levels of brightness.

Figure 3.116: The Y Waveform Monitor, Analyzing Color Bars

The horizontal axis of the display represents the position of the signal on the screen from left to right.

The vertical axis represents luminance values from 0 (bottom) to 255 (top).The top line represents a digital value of 235 (which corresponds to about 100 IRE for NTSC), and represents the whites in the picture. The bottom line represents a digital value of 16 (which corresponds to about 7.5 IRE for NTSC), and represents the blacks in the picture. Anything below this line is considered super black.





**Cb Waveform**: Measures the relative blueness of the picture.

Figure 3.117: The Cb Waveform Monitor, Analyzing Color Bars

The line in the center is a value of 128, which represents zero color (no blue). Dots above the line represent blues in the picture. Dots below the line represent yellows.





**Cr Waveform**: Measures the relative redness of the picture.

Figure 3.118: The Cr Waveform Monitor, Analyzing Color Bars

The line in the center is a value of 128, which represents zero color (no red). Dots above the line represent reds in the picture. Dots below the line represent cyans.
GlobeCaster

**Parade**: Displays the Y Waveform, Cb Waveform, and Cr Waveform monitors in the same panel, from left to right.



Figure 3.119: The Vector Scope/Waveform Monitor

	Start Line	Sets the horizontal line of the picture at which the scope begins analyzing color information. The top of the screen is line 0, and the bottom is line 243 for NTSC, 288 for PAL.		
	# of Lines	Sets the size of the vertical band that the scope analyzes. The entire screen is 243 lines for NTSC, 288 for PAL.		
	All Lines	Resets <b>Start Line</b> to 0 and <b># of Lines</b> to 243 for NTSC, 288 for PAL, so that all lines of the picture are analyzed.		
	Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the picture information the scope displays.		
	Graticule	Adjusts the brightness of the scope overlay.		
Applications Buttons	The <b>Applications</b>	buttons are the tan buttons on the right end of the toolbar.		

Reference

178 Chapter 3

**TIP:** Clicking on the **Shift** button and one of the **Applica-tions** buttons opens the application without closing the Globe-Caster Editor.



Figure 3.120: The Applications Buttons

## Here's what the **Applications** buttons do:

_, ?, X	These work as they do in other Windows applications: _ minimizes the GlobeCaster Editor, <b>?</b> opens a help window, and <b>X</b> closes the GlobeCaster Editor.
Switcher	Changes to the GlobeCaster Switcher control panel. The GlobeCaster Switcher and the GlobeCaster Editor programs are really two heads of the same application, so you can switch freely between them without losing information on the timeline. The <b>Scroll Lock</b> button is a keyboard shortcut to do this.
Animator/ Compositor	Exits GlobeCaster Editor; you are prompted to save any work on the timeline. Opens the GlobeCaster Animator/Compositor interface.
Character Generator	Exits GlobeCaster Editor; you are prompted to save any work on the timeline. Opens the GlobeCaster Character Generator interface.
Effects Generator	Exits GlobeCaster Editor; you are prompted to save any work on the timeline. Opens the GlobeCaster Effects Generator interface.

# GLOBECASTER EDITOR MANUAL TUTORIALS







# Chapter 4 Tutorials

This chapter introduces you to the basics of working in GlobeCaster's Editor, doing both linear and non-linear editing (if Time Machine is installed). Keep in mind that the buttons, panel settings, and pop-up menu options are explained in the previous chapter. If you need further explanation of one of these, please refer to Chapter 3. Rather than explaining system functions, this chapter focuses on giving you step-by-step instructions on how to put those functions together to accomplish basic editing tasks. The following topics are covered:

•	Linear editing	182
•	Non-linear editing with Time Machine	212
•	Using advanced editing modes	256
•	Sync Roll Editing	279

**182** Chapter 4

## Linear Editing

This tutorial introduces you to the basics of linear editing in GlobeCaster's Editor. You will learn how to set up your decks and tapes for editing, log clips, work with timelines, and use some of the GlobeCaster Editor's special functions.

The following topics are covered:

- Setting up decks and tapes for editing
- Striping a tape
- Logging clips
- Setting clip properties
- Building a timeline
- Appending a timeline
- Creating A/V and A/X edits
- Setting the record deck in-point
- Getting your timeline to tape

#### Setting Up Decks And Tapes

**TIP:** Once you get the layout set up the way you want, with the appropriate number of monitors and the bins you need, you can save the layout. Do this by rightclicking in an empty space in a bin and choosing Save Layout from the pop-up menu. A picon representing the layout appears in the bin.

Before you start editing the first time, you need to set up your decks and tapes. You need to assign your decks as record and source decks, and name your tapes. Once you have assigned your decks, the GlobeCaster Editor remembers this for future editing sessions.

Tapes need to be named for new projects as each new tape is inserted in a deck. For existing projects, the list of tapes for the project is automatically loaded when you load the timeline. You just need to tell each source which tape is currently in its deck.

When you open the GlobeCaster Editor for the first time, you see the default layout with a bin in each of the upper corners, two monitors in between the bins, a



toolbar across the middle of the screen, and the timeline at the bottom (Figure 4.1).

Clips	arent A X			Projects			Parent /	N X
Clips sourc Gpl Live P	Tojects			NEXT		WD	my Bay	
Batch000: Live_07.0; Live_07.0; Liv				Mute	((1))	((2))	((3))	
Uve 07.0 Uve 07.0 Uve 07.0 U	C.7.6			((4))	(Out)	Pgm	1.hee Wildow 1	
Live 07.0. Matte Blac			· …	2	3	4	5./ve Victor	
			CLOBAL STREAMS.	C.free Victore 6	7	8. And 17. See	Prv	
	Black 0 44 45 44 Hark In Mark Ott Duration 0 Clip Name	Black D: 00: 00: 00 0 Core Core 11 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5	Timeline Timeline O0:00:00:00 Constant of the second of th	Out		Matte Biac	Pgm-Pvw.j	
GlobeCaster Editor Properties Lin Union Properties Caston Read Spin Only Di Mergo Like Free Save Digitize Batch	Timeline Trim Clip 2 Trim Edit. Slip Src T Slide Save New F00:00	Add Clip Add Clip View Ripple Monitor Mute	Timeline         Track 1         Video         A1         A2         Audio Sc           Beconder         00:00:00:00         0 <td>ub .ock</td> <td>Preview Review Perform Assemble OK</td> <td>Top Bins Btm Bins Scope Options Configure</td> <td>SWITCH Anim/Co Char G Effects 0</td> <td>45 er xmp en Gen</td>	ub .ock	Preview Review Perform Assemble OK	Top Bins Btm Bins Scope Options Configure	SWITCH Anim/Co Char G Effects 0	45 er xmp en Gen

Figure 4.1: The Default GlobeCaster Editor Layout

The right monitor is the output monitor and can be set for either **Timeline**, **Recorder**, or **Off**. The left monitor displays the input source you select. Below each monitor is a set of controls.

Chapter 4 Assigning

Source Decks

The first thing you'll do is assign your source decks. Here's how:

1. Below the left monitor, right-click on the **Source Type** button, the upper left button.



Figure 4.2: The Source Type Button Under the Left Monitor

- 2. Choose **Source A** from the pop-up menu.
- 3. In the Main Controls in the middle of the toolbar (blue buttons), right-click on the **Source** button (Figure 4.3).



Figure 4.3: The Source Button in the Main Controls

You see a pop-up menu listing your decks (Figure 4.4).

	Timeline	Track 1 Video	A1 A2	Audio Scrub
	Recorder	00:08:25:14		Lock
✓ Panasor	nic AG-DS550	) (on serial port 1)		
	Keen	Despoolea	Eject	All Stop
Ionitor Mute				

Figure 4.4: The Source Button Pop-Up Menu

In order for your decks to appear on this list, you must have configured them on the Serial Devices panel. For information on how to do this, see the "Using Configure Panel" chapter in the *GlobeCaster User Guide*.

- 4. Select the deck you want to assign as Source A.
- 5. If you have additional source decks, repeat these steps, except choose **Source B** or **Source C** in step 2.



Now your source decks have been assigned, and you can choose the deck you want by right-clicking on the Source Type button (following figure) below the left monitor and choosing **Source A, Source B,** or **Source C** from the pop-up menu.



Figure 4.5: The Source Type Button

The deck assignments you have made as Source A, Source B, and Source C are saved until you change them.

Chapter 4 **Assigning A** 

Next you'll assign your record deck. Here's how:

Record Deck

1. Right-click on the **Recorder** button in the Main Controls.

Recorder	Timeline	Track 1 Video	A1 A2	Audio Scrub
Button	Recorder	00:08:25:14		Lock
	Source			
	Reel1	Despooled	Eject	All Stop

Figure 4.6: The Recorder Button in the Main Controls

2. From the pop-up menu, select the deck you want to use as your record deck for this project.

In order for your deck to appear on the pop-up menu, it must be configured as a record deck in the Serial Devices panel. For information on how to do this, see the "Using Configure Panel" chapter in the *GlobeCaster User Guide*.

That's it. Your record deck is set.

**Naming Tapes** Next you'll tell the GlobeCaster Editor which tapes you are using. It is important to label each of your source and record tapes with a name and to tell the GlobeCaster Editor these names. That way, it can keep track of which tape each clip comes from. If you come back to a project later, for example, and want to use material from a timeline you have already made, the GlobeCaster Editor tells you which tapes to insert to re-create the timeline.

Here's how to name your tapes in the GlobeCaster Editor:

- 1. Place the tape in the appropriate source or record deck.
- 2. Click on the Tape Name button, below the **Source** button (Figure 4.7). The text on this button changes depending on the selected source. In this case, for an unnamed tape, it should say **Reel** #.



Figure 4.7: The Tape Name Button



A pop-up menu appears.



Figure 4.8: Tape Name Pop-Up Menu

3. Select **New Tape** from the pop-up menu.

This assigns a default name to the tape. The default name for source tapes is **Reel #** and the default name for record tapes is **Record #**. This name now appears on the Tape Name button.

- 4. To assign a specific name to the tape, click on the Tape Name button again.
- 5. Select **Tape Properties** from the pop-up menu.

This opens the **Tape Properties** panel in the upper left corner of the screen (Figure 4.9).

Tape Properties
Reel1 Recordable
Tape Name
Name
indine (
Value
Delete
Use Video Audio Properties
Tape Color Correction Setup Use
NLR Color Correction Setup Use

Figure 4.9: The Tape Properties Panel



6. In the first field, above **Tape Name**, type in the name of the tape (Figure 4.10) and press **Enter** on your keyboard.

Tape Properties		X
DemoTape	Recordable	
Tape Name		

Figure 4.10: Typing in a New Tape Name

7. Close the panel by clicking on the **X** in the upper right corner.

The name of the tape now appears on the Tape Name pop-up menu (Figure 4.11), and on the face of the **Tape Name** button.



Figure 4.11: The New Name on the Tape Name Pop-Up Menu

8. Repeat this process until you have named all your tapes for the project in the GlobeCaster Editor, or whenever you add another tape in the midst of a project.

Now all your tapes appear on the Tape Name pop-up menu.

Each time you swap tapes (unless prompted to do so by the GlobeCaster Editor), let the GlobeCaster Editor know which tape you have inserted by clicking on the Tape Name button and selecting the tape from the pop-up menu.

To remove tape names from the pop-up menu, you can click on the **Remove Unused Tapes** button in the **Editor Options** panel (see "Editor Options Panel" on page 93 for information on this panel). This removes the names of tapes that are not associated with clips on the current timeline.



**Striping A Tape** In order to edit with GlobeCaster, your record tapes must use be striped (black with timecode). This ensures that there is continuous timecode from start to finish. When GlobeCaster edits, it performs insert edits, which use the existing timecode on the record tape as reference points for where to make the edits. It does not record over this timecode as it edits; the timecode remains intact.

Because of this, if you are restriping a previously used tape, we recommend you rewind the tape to the beginning and restripe the entire tape. Avoid striping only a portion of a previously striped tape.

If you try to edit onto a tape that is not striped, your record deck fast forwards and rewinds back and forth until you click **All Stop**. The GlobeCaster Editor is telling the deck to go to a specific timecode, and the deck is searching in vain for this timecode.

You can stripe a tape using the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel in the GlobeCaster Switcher.

To stripe a tape, do the following:

1. Check your deck for a switch that can be set to **Preset** or **Regen**. If your deck has this switch, set it to **Preset**.

Your deck uses its preset timecode number, such as 01:00:00:00, as the beginning timecode number.

2. Open the GlobeCaster Switcher and click on the **Fade** button in the group of buttons to the right of the T-bar (Figure 4.12).

30	30	Į			
Mix	FX	DSK1	DSK2	DSK3	DSK4
Lock			30	30	15
		-		Fade	Aux
Cut	Auto	Stop	Fade	Mix	Mix

Figure 4.12: The Fade Button

This fades the Program out to black, and provides a consistent, dark black for striping tapes. (The on-screen monitor is not affected by the **Fade** button, but you see black on your external monitor.)

**TIP:** To toggle between the Globe-Caster Editor and the GlobeCaster Switcher programs, press the **Scroll Lock** key on your keyboard.

**TIP:** During editing you want to reset this switch to **Regen**.



3. Click on the **Panels** button (Figure 4.13) and choose **VTR Transport** from the pop-up menu.



Figure 4.13: The Panels Button

The **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel appears in the upper right corner of the screen (Figure 4.14).

VTF	R Transport / Sync Roll / Live Digi			X
	Ports 1 to 4			
	V4 : Panasonic AG-DS550	0	Off	Off
	Empty	9	Off	Off
	Empty	9	Off	Off
	Empty	9	Off	Off
тмі	TimeMachine 1	gram Ou	t Ch 1/2	Ch 1/2
	Mark		Lock	
	Cue	TMLen		
		Insert	V A1 A2	3
	Mark All Start All Sync Ro	Sto	All	Pause
	Cue All Build Timelin	ne	Record	Safety
	New TL Save	2	New Clip Save	}

Figure 4.14: The VTR Transport Panel



4. Click on the button that lists your record deck to turn it on (the button turns yellow).

VTR Transport / Sync Roll / Live Digitize X Ports 1 to 4 Mixer 1 V4 : Panasonic AG-DS550 Record Off 2 Empty Off Off 3 Empty Off Off 4 Empty Off Off

Figure 4.15: Selecting the Record Deck

5. Click on the record button, the one with the red dot (Figure 4.16).



Figure 4.16: The Record Button

6. If you see a warning message asking whether you want to erase existing timecode, click **Yes**.

Your tape is striping. Let it run for the length of the tape, or for as long as you need for the project you plan to record to the tape.

7. When your tape is striped, click the stop button (Figure 4.17).



Figure 4.17: The Stop Button

Now that your tape is striped, you are ready to record to it. If your record deck has a **Preset/Regen** switch, change it back to **Regen**.

At this point your decks and tapes are squared away, and you're ready to start logging clips in the GlobeCaster Editor.

**TIP:** To toggle between the Globe-Caster Switcher and the GlobeCaster Editor programs, press the **Scroll Lock** key on your keyboard.

Chapter 4

Logging Clips

Now that your decks are assigned, you're ready to log clips. In order for the GlobeCaster Editor to know which portions of your tapes you want to use, you must designate the in points and out points of the clips. To log clips in the GlobeCaster Editor, do the following:

1. Under the left monitor, right-click on the Source Type button to select your source deck (**Source A, B,** or **C**).



Figure 4.18: The Source Type Button Under the Left Monitor

Clicking on the Source Type button under the left monitor also turns on the **Source** button in the Main Controls on the toolbar (Figure 4.19).

	Timeline	Track 1 Video	A1 A2	Audio Scrub
	Recorder	00:08:25:14		Lock
Source	- Source			
Button	Reel1	Despooled	Eject	All Stop

Figure 4.19: The Source Button in the Main Controls

Once this button is on, you can use the transport controls under the left monitor to control the selected source deck. If you find that the transport controls under the left monitor are not functioning at some point during your session logging clips, make sure that this **Source** button is on.

2. Using the **Tape Name** button in the Main Controls, select the name of the tape you are using.



Figure 4.20: Choosing the Tape Name



- Use the transport controls or shuttle slider under the left monitor to cue your tape up to your first in point.
   When you find the place you want the clip to begin click the Mark In button
  - 4. When you find the place you want the clip to begin, click the **Mark In** button (or press **m** on the keyboard).



Figure 4.21: The Mark In and Mark Out Buttons

Once you begin creating a clip by clicking the **Mark In** button, you see a picon for the clip in the Clip picon window on the left side of the toolbar.

Clip Picon	Properties	Lift	Undo
	THE REAL PROPERTY OF	Extract	Redo
		Split	Only Disk
	sample09	Merge	Use Freeze
	Save	Digitize	Batch

Figure 4.22: The Clip Picon

- 5. Continue playing the tape or shuttle it to the place where you want the clip to end, and click the **Mark Out** button (or press the comma on the keyboard).
- 6. Drag-and-drop the Clip picon into an appropriate bin to save the clip, or drag the Clip picon onto the timeline for immediate use.
- 7. Repeat the steps above, clicking on the **Mark In** and **Mark Out** buttons and saving your clips.

TIP: To mark clips, you can type in the timecode in the in point and out point timecode fields (previous figure), then click the Mark In and Mark Out buttons. If you want the first frame of the clip to be the picon for the clip, be sure to cue the deck to the first frame before clicking the Mark In button. To cue the deck to the place where you want to begin logging clips, you can type in the desired timecode in the current position timecode field (previous figure), then press Enter on your keyboard. The deck cues to that frame.



Automated

Features

The GlobeCaster Editor also has functions that make logging clips easier. **Splice**, **Auto Splice**, **Auto 3 Point**, **Overwrite**, and **Auto Save** help you place your logged clips where you want them. The buttons for these functions are under the output (right) monitor. (**Auto Batch** is for non-linear editing. See "Using AutoBatch" on page 218 for a tutorial on this function.)

### Splice

To place a logged clip on the timeline, click the **Splice** button under the output (right) monitor (Figure 4.23), or press **j** on your keyboard.



Figure 4.23: The Splice Button

The clip appears in the timeline, with the Position Bar at the last frame, ready to splice the next clip.



Figure 4.24: The Spliced Clip on the Timeline

### AutoSplice

If you are logging a series of clips that you want on a timeline, turning the Auto Splice function on automatically places clips on the timeline as you mark them.



Click on the **AutoSplice** button under the output (right) monitor (Figure 4.25) to turn it on.

	Timeline	00:00:00:00	New Clip
	Mark In	::	Cue In
AutoSplice	Mark Out	::	Cue Out
Button 🔨	Splice	Overwrite	Replace
	AutoSplice A	uto3Pnt AutoBatc	h AutoSave

Figure 4.25: The AutoSplice Button

As you mark your clips they appear on the timeline at the location of the Position Bar.

#### Auto 3 Point

The Auto 3 Point feature is designed for three-point editing. The **Auto3Pnt** button is located under the output (right) monitor (Figure 4.26).



Figure 4.26: The Auto3Pnt Button

Three-point editing means that once you define three of the four timecode points relating to the clip (in and out point on the source tape, and in and out point on the timeline), the GlobeCaster Editor automatically places the clip on the timeline. The GlobeCaster Editor always calculates the fourth point, but when Auto 3 Point is on it automatically places the clip on the timeline after you mark the third point.

For example, you can mark the in and out points of your clip, and then mark the in point on the timeline where you want it to start. Since the GlobeCaster Editor already knows the duration, it calculates the out point on the timeline and places the clip in the correct spot. Or, you can mark the in and out points on the timeline where you want the clip to go, and then mark the in or out point of the clip. Since the GlobeCaster Editor knows the duration from the timeline timecode, it calculates the other point for the clip and places it on the timeline.

#### Overwrite

The Overwrite function splices in a newly created clip at the Position Bar, but instead of moving existing clips down the timeline, it overwrites what was after the Position Bar for the duration of the clip being added.

# **196** )))) Chapter 4

The **Overwrite** button is under the output (right) monitor (Figure 4.27).



Figure 4.27: The Overwrite Button

### AutoSave

If you are saving a number of clips to the same folder, using **AutoSave** spares you the step of manually saving your clips. You tell the GlobeCaster Editor the path to the bin, and then every time you define a clip (mark its in point and out point) it is automatically saved to the bin. You can use this in conjunction with the other buttons to save clips to a bin at the same time you create a timeline.

Here's how to use AutoSave:

1. Click on the **Configure** button on the right side of the toolbar (Figure 4.28).



Figure 4.28: The Configure Button

2. Select **Global Settings** from the pop-up menu.



The **Global Settings** panel appears (Figure 4.29). This is where you set the default path for files to be saved.

Global Settings Revert X
Graphics Playback Aspect Ratio
Program Preview 16:9
System Output
Alpha Output Default FS1 (Pgm)
Load Test Framestore
Input Status Lights
On Main Panel Default FS2 (Prv)
Cue Key Mode
Clear Key Toggle Key Input 4
Default Save Paths:
Timelines: C:\GC\bins\clips\projects\
Timeline Clips: C:\GC\bins\clips\
Live Clips: C:\GC\bins\clips\
ClipMems: C:\GC\bins\clips\
Snap Path: C:\GC\bins\Stills\Grabs\

Figure 4.29: The Global Settings Panel

3. In the Clips field, type in the path for your project bin.

For a full explanation of the **Global Settings** panel, see the "Using Configure Panels" chapter in the *GlobeCaster User Guide*.

- 4. Close the **Global Settings** panel by clicking on the **X** in the upper right corner of the panel.
- 5. Click on the **AutoSave** button at the bottom of the right monitor controls to turn it on.



Figure 4.30: The AutoSave Button

**AutoSave** is now on, and each time you define a clip (mark both an in and an out point) it is automatically saved to the specified bin. Be sure to click the **New Clip** button under the right monitor between marking each clip.

**NOTE:** Be sure to end path names in the **Global Settings** panel with a backslash (\). Phrases after the last backslash are used as prefixes for file names. For example, if the Clips path name is set to D:\GlobeCaster 2B\bins\clips (with no final backslash), the default bin for clips is D:\GlobeCaster 2B\bins, and clips saved here are named clips# (numbers are assigned automatically).

Chapter 4

Setting Clip Properties By using the **Clip Main Properties** and **Clip Audio Properties** panels, you can set properties of individual clips. The properties you set in these panels apply only to clips you have selected. Select a clip by clicking on it in the timeline.

In the **Clip Main Properties** panel, you can choose which audio or video channels are recorded, set audio tracks so they can be trimmed independently of their video tracks, or access the **Color Correction** panel. To access the **Clip Main Properties** panel, click on the **Clip Props** button in the Clip Controls on the toolbar, or rightclick on a clip on the timeline or the current clip picon and choose **Properties** from the pop-up menu. For a complete explanation of this panel, see "Clip Main Properties Panel" on page 75.

In the **Clip Audio Properties** panel, you can change the audio levels or open the **Equalizer Panel**. To access it, click on the **Clip Props** button in the Clip Controls on the left end of the toolbar. Or, right-click either in a Level track or on an audio clip in an Audio track and choose **Properties** from the pop-up menu. All three of these actions bring up the **Clip Main Properties** panel. On this panel, click on the panel button in the upper left corner that says **Clip Main Properties**, and choose **Clip Audio Properties** from the pop-up menu. For a complete explanation of this panel, see "Equalizer Panel" on page 165.

#### Building A Timeline

Once you've logged your clips, you're ready to put them together, along with any graphics or effects you've created in GlobeCaster's other applications. The GlobeCaster Editor timeline is where you put all the pieces together.

## Setting the Recorder's In Point

When you build a timeline, it's a good idea to start by setting the recorder's in point. This tells the GlobeCaster Editor where you wish to begin recording on your record tape. By doing this when you begin building a timeline, you can use the Preview function to check sections of the timeline as you go.

To set the recorder's in point, do the following:

1. Click on the **Options** button on the toolbar (Figure 4.31).



Figure 4.31: The Options Button

**NOTE:** Preview functions the same as Perform, which records portions of the timeline to tape, except Preview does not enable the insert mode on the record deck. So, in order to use Preview, you must have a striped tape in your record deck and have set the in point on the record tape.



The **Editor Options** panel appears in the upper left corner of the screen (Figure 4.32).

Editor Options		X
Drag Clips [	Move	Roll
Edits Lock Trans	Trim Clip	Slide Edit
Auto Beats	Follow Rec	Tape Scrub
Audio Scrub Length	2 Arc	ound pos bar
Load Files To S	iource	Single Click
Preview		VVV
Auto-Assemble M	ethod	neckerboard
Timeline starts	1:00:00:0	0 Mark
Res	et timeline	for assembly
F	emove Unu	sed Tapes
Li Li	ad Timeline	e On Scrub
Unload TL Loa	d Timeline	from PosBar
R	eaction fram	nes O
Postr	oll 00:	00:02:00
Max Safe Prer	oll 00:	00:30:00
Abort edits if o	f by mor <u>e t</u>	han 0
Abor	ted Edit Ret	ries 5

Figure 4.32: The Editor Options Panel

- 2. You can set the in point for the record tape two ways. Do *one* of the following:
  - a. If you know the timecode where you want the record tape to start, type the timecode in the **Timeline starts** field and press **Enter** on your keyboard.
  - b. Using the transport controls, cue up your record tape to the point where you want your timeline to begin. Then, click on the **Mark** button to the right of the **Timeline starts** field (Figure 4.33).

Editor Options		X	
Drag Clips	Move	Roll	
Edits Lock Trans	Trim Clip	Slide Edit	
Auto Beats	Follow Rec	Tape Scrub	
Audio Scrub Length	2 Ar	ound pos bar	
Load Files To	Source	Single Click	
		VVV	
Auto-Assemble	Method 🔽	heckerboard	Mark
Timeline starts	01:00:00:0	0 Mark	Button

Figure 4.33: The Mark Button

# **200** )))) Chapter 4

The **Timeline starts** field now displays the current timecode on your record tape. When you **Assemble** the timeline, it begins recording at this point on the record tape.

### Adding Clips to the Timeline

Now that you set the recorder's in point, you are ready to place events on the timeline.

Here's how to add clips to a timeline:

1. Drag-and-drop a clip from one of your bins onto the timeline.

The clip appears on the timeline as a colored bar with the clip's picon in the middle of it.



Figure 4.34: The First Clip on the Timeline

The colored bar represents the length of the clip. You can change the duration of the clip (and also its in and out points on the source tape) by dragging left or right on the trimming handles on the end of the clip. You can move the clip by clicking on it anywhere except the trimming handles and dragging.

2. Double-click on a clip picon from a different tape in your bins. If you have only one source deck, use a framestore instead of a clip.

The clip automatically appears at the end of the timeline.

3. Click-and-drag the first clip all the way to the left end of the timeline.

**NOTE:** This part of the tutorial requires two source decks so you can transition between clips. If you have only one source deck, you can substitute framestores for clips on one of the video tracks.



4. Click-and-drag the second clip and place it on the second (**Video 2**) track of the timeline so that the two clips overlap slightly (Figure 4.35).

	01:00:00	01:00:14:28
·		
+		
↓  +  Video 2	Live_07.02.2001_15	.03.35
	<u>l</u>	

Figure 4.35: Overlapping Clips on the Timeline

5. Right-click on either clip in the overlapped area and choose **Create Dissolve** from the pop-up menu.

This creates a dissolve between the two clips. It appears as a tan bar in the FX track of the timeline (Figure 4.36).

	01:00:00 01:00:14:28	X
+		Π
+	Live_07.02.2001_15.03.35	
FX	1>2	
	اً ب	

Figure 4.36: Dissolve on the Timeline

The dissolve is the same length as the overlapped area of the clips. Like the clips, its length can be adjusted by clicking-and-dragging on the trimming handles.

202 Chapter 4

Previewing The Timeline You now have a timeline with a dissolve transition between two clips. If you want to see the timeline play through, do the following:

- 1. Make sure your source tapes are in your decks, your decks are assigned, and your tapes are named. (If you have not yet done so, see the previous sections of this tutorial for instructions on how to do this.)
- 2. In the Main Controls, click on the **Timeline** button (Figure 4.37).

Timeline	Timeline	Track 1	Video	A1 A2	Audio Scrub
Button	Recorder	00:00:1	9:28		Lock
	Source				
	N/A	Pauseo	1	Eject	All Stop

Figure 4.37: The Timeline Button in the Main Transport Control

This allows you to use the Main Controls to move through the timeline. This also turns on the **Timeline** button under the right monitor, setting the right monitor to display the timeline as the output.

3. In the Main Controls, click the **First Frame** button (Figure 4.38).

First Frame Button	Timeline	Track 1 Video	A1 A2	Audio Scrub	
	Recorder	00:00:19:28		Lock	
	Source				
		N/A	Paused	Eject	All Stop

Figure 4.38: The First Frame Button in the Main Controls

This resets the timeline to play from the beginning.

- 4. Click on the clips and events you want to preview to select them (hold down the **Control** key and click on events to select multiple ones), or right-click on an event on the timeline and choose **Select All** from the pop-up menu.
- 5. Still in the Main Controls, click the **Preview** button.



Figure 4.39: The Preview Button in the Main Controls

**NOTE:** You must select the events you want to preview.

GlobeCaster

On the right on-screen monitor you see the GlobeCaster Editor play the clips and dissolve between them.

**NOTE:** In order to use the Preview function, you must have a striped tape in your record deck and must have set the in point for the record tape. If you have not done this yet, see "Setting the Recorder's In Point" on page 198.

Chapter 4 204 **Adding Effects** 

And DSK's

You've just learned the basics of linear editing on the GlobeCaster Editor timeline. If you'd like to experiment, try replacing the dissolve with some of the effects provided with GlobeCaster.

To do this, drag-and-drop a picon from the **GlobeCaster\Bins\FX\Sampler** bin onto the dissolve event. The effect picon appears on the transition event.



Figure 4.40: An Effects Picon on the Timeline

Some effects, such as the one in the previous figure, are fixed-length effects, in which case you need to adjust the length of the transition (the overlap area of the clips) to fit the effect. Other effects, such as wipes and dissolves, can vary in length, and automatically load onto the timeline at the correct length to fit the transition.

You can also try placing a downstream key on the timeline. The following DSK is in the **GlobeCaster\Bins\FX\Sampler** bin. It is the picon with flames along the bottom. The file name is **\_FlamAlf.tfx**.



Figure 4.41: The Flames DSK Picon

NOTE: If your GlobeCaster is equipped with an additional DSK card, you will see an additional track on the timeline labeled DSK2. Two additional DSK cards will allow you to have two additional tracks on the timeline labeled, DSK2 and DSK3. These tracks function and behave just like the other tracks.



The downstream key event appears in a separate DSK track (Figure 4.42).



Figure 4.42: The Downstream Key on the Timeline

You can change the length of the DSK independently of the length of the video clips.

Saving Your<br/>TimelineAt this point, you may want to save the timeline you created. First, it is helpful to<br/>name it. Here's how:

1. Right-click on the Timeline Picon (Figure 4.43) in the Timeline Controls.



Figure 4.43: The Timeline Picon

- 2. Choose **Rename** from the pop-up menu.
- 3. Type in the name and press Enter on your keyboard.

The timeline is renamed. Now you are ready to save it. To do so, drag the Timeline Picon into a bin. Or, click the **Save** button (previous figure) in the Timeline Controls. The timeline is saved in the path designated in the **Global Settings** panel. (For information on how to access the panel, see page 196.)

**Appending A Timeline** If you have a timeline loaded in the GlobeCaster Editor, you can append another timeline to it. This feature is convenient if you are creating a lengthy project. To speed the time it takes to navigate around the timeline, you can cut the project into smaller sections, then paste all the timelines together when you're ready to record the project.

To append a timeline, do the following:

1. Load the first timeline by double-clicking on its picon or dragging the picon to the timeline.

Chapter 4 206

**TIP:** Be sure to release the mouse button, wait for the appended timeline to appear, then release the **Control** key.

- 2. Click on the picon for the second timeline so that it is selected (yellow).
- 3. Holding down the **Control** key on your keyboard, drag the picon for the second timeline to the timeline area on the interface. When the Position Bar is where you want the second timeline to begin, release the mouse button. Watch for the appended timeline to appear *before* releasing the **Control** key.

	01:00:00:00	01:00:14:29
+ Video 1		
+-Video 2	Live	07.02.2001 15.03.35
FX	4-224	
DSK		
	<u></u>	

Figure 4.44: Dragging the Second Timeline Picon to the Timeline

The second timeline appears, beginning where the Position Bar was located when you released the mouse button.

	01:00:11:09 01:0	00:15:00	01:00:19:15 X
+		NEXT NEXT NEXT	
+	<b>1</b> 5.03.35	NEXT NEXT NEXT	
FX		1>2 > 1>2 > 1>2	2>1
DSK			
	1	t.	

Figure 4.45: The Second Timeline is Appended after the Position Bar

The timeline begins at the point where the Position Bar was when you released the mouse button. You can place the Position Bar in the midst of the first timeline. If you do this, the second timeline overwrites the remainder of the first timeline.

**Creating A/V** And A/X Edits There may be times when you want to transition between two clips from the same source tape. This is especially true if you are working with only one play deck. GlobeCaster has two functions that allow you to do this with linear clips. One, the A/X edit, uses a single frame for one of the clips during the transition. The other,



the A/V edit, is unique to GlobeCaster. It uses a ClipMem, a short bit of digitized video, during the transition. You do not need to have a Time Machine in order to use the A/X or A/V edit. (If you do have a Time Machine, you do not need to use A/V or A/X edits; you can digitize one or both clips instead.) See "Make A/X Edit" on page 113 and "Make A/V Edit" on page 112 for more information on these types of edits.

#### A/X Edit

To create an A/X edit, do the following:

1. Click on the **New** button in the Timeline Controls (Figure 4.46).



Figure 4.46: The New Button

This clears the timeline so you can build a new one.

- 2. Place two clips from the same source tape on the timeline so that they overlap.
- 3. Right-click in the overlap area of the clip you want to transition to and choose **Create Dissolve** from the pop-up menu.

You now have two clips from the same tape and a dissolve between them on the timeline (Figure 4.47).

	01:00:00:00	01:00:03:19
+-Video 1	sample09	
+	sample10	
FX	1>2	J
	P	

Figure 4.47: Two Clips with Dissolve

If you wish to use a wipe instead of a simple dissolve, drag a wipe picon on top of the dissolve on the timeline. (You do not need to create a dissolve first to place an effect as a transition. You can drag-and-drop a wipe, or any effect, on the overlapped area of the two clips and it appears in the FX track.)

# **208** Chapter 4

If you try to **Preview** this timeline at this point, you get an error message telling you it is not possible to mix two clips from the same tape. To make that possible, you will create the A/X edit.

4. Right-click on the clip you want to "freeze" during the transition and choose **Make A/X Edit** from the pop-up menu.

Your deck scrubs through the clip to obtain the correct frame for the freeze. While it is doing this you see a loading bar going up and down in the Timeline Picon, indicating that the GlobeCaster Editor is busy.

The GlobeCaster Editor selects the correct frame of the transition, and splits the clip into a video clip leading up to the transition and a framestore lasting the length of the transition (Figure 4.48).



Figure 4.48: The A/X Edit on the Timeline

The framestore is saved in **GlobeCaster\Bins\Stills\AX\_stills** in case you wish to use it again.

5. Click Assemble in the Timeline Controls.

The GlobeCaster Editor lays the first clip to your master record tape, and then cues up the framestore and the second clip for the second pass.

When you play back your record tape, you see a seamless transition between the two clips.

#### A/V Edit

Creating an A/V edit is similar, except neither clip is "frozen" during the transition. Instead of using a framestore, the GlobeCaster Editor creates a ClipMem, a bit of digitized video recorded to the RAM on the Warp Engine. By creating a ClipMem, you are essentially transitioning between two video sources, and the resulting edit is indistinguishable from a standard A/B roll edit. To create an A/V edit, do the following:



1. Click on the New button in the Timeline Controls (Figure 4.49).



Figure 4.49: The New Button

This clears the timeline so you can build a new one.

- 2. Place two clips from the same source tape on the timeline so that they overlap.
- 3. Right-click in the overlap area of the clip you want to transition to and choose **Create Dissolve** from the pop-up menu.

You now have two clips from the same tape and a dissolve between them on the timeline.

	01:00:00 1	01:00:03:19
+	sample09	
+	sample10	
FX	1>2	J
	f	

Figure 4.50: Two Clips with Dissolve

If you wish to use a wipe instead of a simple dissolve, drag a wipe picon over the dissolve on the timeline.

If you try to **Preview** the timeline at this point, you get an error message telling you it is not possible to mix two clips from the same tape. To make this possible, you will create the A/V edit.

 Right-click on the clip you want to transition to (the clip you right-click on is the one the GlobeCaster Editor makes a ClipMem of) and choose Make A/V Edit from the pop-up menu.

Your deck scrubs through the clips so GlobeCaster can digitize the require data.

**NOTE:** Keep in mind that the Warp Engine is being used as a video recording and playback device, so it cannot create warp effects at the same time. Wipe and dissolve effects (with or without graphics) work great with a ClipMem, but not warping digital effects. For these type of effects, use the A/Xroll edit described above.



You see the overlapping section of one clip is separate from the rest of the clip and is blue (Figure 4.51). This indicates it has been stored as a digitized clip in system memory.



Figure 4.51: The A/V Edit on the Timeline

If the dissolve is longer than the maximum length for a ClipMem (this depends on the amount of RAM on your Warp Engine), the GlobeCaster Editor creates as many ClipMems as needed to cover the transition. The ClipMems are saved in **Bins\Clips\ClipMem**.

5. Click **Assemble** in the Main Controls (Figure 4.52).

Preview — Button	Preview	Top Bins	
	Review	Btm Bins	Switcher
	Perform	Scope	Anim/Comp
	Assemble	Options	Char Gen
	OK	Configure	Effects Gen

Figure 4.52: The Assemble Button

The GlobeCaster Editor loads the ClipMem file(s) into the Warp Engine and records the transition in one pass and the other video clip in the next pass.

When you play back your record tape, you see a seamless transition between the two clips.

At this point, you have learned how to log clips, build a timeline, and work with some of GlobeCaster's special effects. You are ready to record your timeline to tape. The next section shows you how.

Getting Your Timeline To Tape Once you have previewed your edits and have fine tuned your timeline, you are ready to record the entire timeline to tape.

To record the timeline to tape, do the following:

1. Click the Assemble button in the Main Controls in the toolbar (Figure 4.53).



 Preview
 Top Bins
 ?
 X

 Review
 Btm Bins
 Switcher

 Perform
 Scope
 Anim/Comp

 Assemble
 Options
 Char Gen

 Button
 OK
 Configure
 Effects Gen

Figure 4.53: The Assemble Button

The entire timeline is recorded to tape.

2. Once you have recorded to tape, you can click on the events on the timeline to select them, then click the **Review** button to view them and confirm they are OK.

Review	Preview	Top Bins	
	Review	Btm Bins	Switcher
Batton	Perform	Scope	Anim/Comp
	Assemble	Options	Char Gen
	OK	Configure	Effects Gen

Figure 4.54: The Review Button

The Review function shows you the events you selected on the timeline.

That's it, you now know the basics of linear editing with the GlobeCaster Editor. This tutorial taught you how to assign your decks, stripe a tape, log clips, build a timeline, and record your timeline to tape. More information on specific functions can be found in Chapter 3, "Reference." Other tutorials in this chapter address different types of editing, such as editing to audio or L-cuts, as well as non-linear editing.

TIP: If you want to record everything to the master, including events that have already been recorded, you can click the **Reset** timeline for assembly button in the Editor Options panel (see "Editor Options Panel" on page 93 for information on this panel). If you wish to record only some events or clips, click on them to select them and then click Perform

**NOTE:** If some events have already been recorded to the

master, only those

that have not been

recorded or have been changed are recorded.

212 Chapter 4

# Non-Linear Editing With Time Machine

This tutorial is designed to assist you in non-linear editing with Time Machine. The following topics are covered in this section:

- Digitizing clips
- Batch Digitizing
- Looking at source deck vs. clip timecode
- Logging clips from a digitized clip
- Digitizing AVI and WAV files
- Changing loop count and playback speed
- Building a hybrid (linear/non-linear) timeline

Working with non-linear clips in the GlobeCaster Editor is similar to working with linear clips. The GlobeCaster Editor is designed so that you don't have to worry about whether the clips you are using are linear or non-linear. You use the same tools to edit both. In fact, the last section of this tutorial shows you how to work with both on the same timeline, a hybrid timeline.

However, there are of course advantages to working with non-linear clips. The greatest of these is increased speed. The GlobeCaster Editor with Time Machine can instantly cue your clips to the timecode or Position Bar location you specify. When you use the advanced editing modes, the on-screen monitors update instantly as you edit. With non-linear clips, you can also change the playback speed and direction. In general, digitizing your video and audio information gives you greater speed, flexibility, and versatility when working in your timeline. This tutorial shows you how to take advantage of some of these benefits.

If you need information on assigning your decks, naming tapes, and logging clips, see the previous tutorial on linear editing. This tutorial assumes you have already learned these skills, and that you have linear clips to work with.

**Digitizing With Time Machine** If you have Time Machine installed, there are several ways to digitize clips. You can digitize clips on the timeline, or send clips to a queue to be digitized in a batch. The **Batch Digitize** window allows you to adjust settings, such as compression level, for individual or groups of clips.

You can also digitize your program out in the GlobeCaster Switcher by using the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel. See the *the GlobeCaster Switcher Manual* for information on how to do this.

Each digitized clip has a default of 1 second of trim room at the head and tail of the clip. Digitized clips are saved on the Time Machine hard drives. You can also create shortcut picons for Time Machine clips and save them in any bin by dragging the clip picon into the bin.

You can digitize AVI and WAV files by dragging them onto the timeline, or by adding them to the Batch Digitize list.

This section tells you how to digitize clips on the timeline:

**NOTE:** You can redigitize a clip that has already been digitized. Doing this allows you to change the settings, such as the compression level.

Digitizing Clips On The Timeline


1. Place five linear clips on the timeline.

	01:00:00	01:00:02:27
+-Video 1	sample11 sample12 sample13 sample14	sample15
Duration 00:00:02:01		

Figure 4.55: Five Linear Clips on the Timeline

- 2. Make sure that the original tape is in the source deck it was assigned to.
- Click on the first linear clip on the timeline to select it. The clip is highlighted in yellow (Figure 4.56)

)1:(	00:0	00:	00		_	_	_									
	L.	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	ĵ.	1.	4		
						mak	.1.1									
	-	=	-	=	50	npre			=	=	=	=			=	_

Figure 4.56: The Clip Highlighted in Yellow

- 4. Do *one* of the following:
  - a. Click on the **Digitize** button on the toolbar (Figure 4.57).



Figure 4.57: Digitize Button

b. Right-click on the clip and select **Digitize to Time Machine** from the popup menu.

# **214** )))) Chapter 4

You see a horizontal status bar go up and down in the clip picon, telling you that Time Machine is digitizing the clip. You know Time Machine is finished digitizing when the status bar stops, your deck stops playback, and your clip turns dark blue on the timeline. Digitized clips are designated by dark blue.

Next you will select more than one clip on the timeline to digitize. To do so, do the following:

- 1. Select the other four clips on the timeline. To do this, do one of the following:
  - a. Hold down the **Control** key on your keyboard and click on each clip.
  - b. Right-click on the second clip, and choose **Select From Here** from the pop-up menu (Figure 4.58).



Figure 4.58: Choosing Select From Here

The second clip and those after it are selected.

2. Repeat step 4 from above, either clicking on the **Digitize** button, or rightclicking on one of the clips and choosing **Digitize to Time Machine** from the pop-up menu.

Time Machine digitizes each clip.

Selecting Clips For Batch Digitizing The Batch Digitize window provides a convenient way to digitize groups of clips in a batch. You can see the clips in the Batch List displayed in a bin window. There, you can adjust settings for the clips and select which ones to include in the batch.

There are several reasons why you may want to use the Batch Digitize window instead of digitizing clips on the timeline. You may want to view information about the clips or adjust settings, such as compression level. You may want to use **AutoBatch** to select the clips for digitizing as you log them. Or, you may want to log a large number of clips, then decide later which ones to digitize and use in your timeline.



**NOTE:** Sending your clips to the Batch Digitize window does not save them. To save them, you must open the Batch Digitize window and either digitize the clips or save the **To do list** before exiting the GlobeCaster Editor. There are three ways you can add clips to the Batch Digitize bin. You can select them from the timeline, you can use **AutoBatch** to automatically send them to the Batch Digitize bin as you log them, or you can drag picons from a bin into the Batch Digitize window **To do list**. You will try each one of these.

### Selecting Clips to Batch Digitize from the Timeline

Selecting clips for batch digitizing from the timeline is similar to digitizing from the timeline, except you choose a different pop-up menu option. To do this, do the following:

1. Place five linear clips on the timeline.



Figure 4.59: Five Linear Clips on the Timeline

- 2. Make sure that the original tape is in the source deck it was assigned to.
- 3. Select the last three clips on the timeline. To do this, do *one* of the following:
  - a. Hold down the **Control** key on your keyboard and click on the clips.



b. Right-click on the third clip, and choose **Select From Here** from the popup menu (Figure 4.60).



Figure 4.60: Choosing Select From Here



4. Right-click on one of the selected clips and choose **Add to Batch Digitize** from the pop-up menu (Figure 4.61).



Figure 4.61: Choosing Add to Batch Digitize

5. Click on the **Batch** button on the toolbar (Figure 4.62).



Figure 4.62: The Batch Button



The Batch Digitize window opens across the lower part of the screen (Figure 4.63).

Globe	Caste	r Batch Dig	itize							
			DemoTape	Select	All	Start	Clip %:		In Bin	
		d 00:00:02:27	1	Deselec	t All	Stop	<u>.</u>		In Timeline	Editor
				Remove S	elected Man	age Tapes Save	List Total No:		Save Now	
								OK		
To do list									[P	arent 🗛 🔀
Icon	Select	State	Name	Tape	Volume	Start	Length	End Components	Compression	User
		Waiting	sample11	DemoTape	VQA_GC	00:02:43:04	00:00:00:16	00:02:43:20 Video Audio 182 Audio 384	🔻 Default (Opti	
		Walting	sample12	DemoTape	VQA_GC	00:02:44:12	00:00:00:15	00:02:44:27 Video Audio 182 Audio 384	Default (Opti	
		Waiting	sample 13	DemoTape	VQA_GC	00:02:45:16	00:00:00:18	00:02:46:04 Video Audio 182 Audio 384	Default (Opti	
		Waiting	sample14	DemoTape	VQA_GC	00:02:46:26	00:00:00:15	00:02:47:11 Video Audio 182 Audio 384	🔽 Default (Opti	
		Walting	sample 15	DemoTape	VQA_GC	00:02:48:02	00:00:00:23	00:02:48:25 Video Audio 182 Audio 384	🗸 Default (Opti	

Figure 4.63: The Batch Digitize Window

You see the clips you selected in the **To do list** bin.

6. Click the **Editor** button (Figure 4.64) to close the Batch Digitize window and return to the main the GlobeCaster Editor interface for the next phase of this tutorial.



Figure 4.64: The GlobeCaster Editor Button

#### Using AutoBatch

Turning on the **AutoBatch** button automatically sends clips to the Batch Digitize bin as you log them. To do this, do the following:

- 1. Place a tape in your source deck. Use a different one than the one for the clips you used in the previous section. (Later in the tutorial you will want clips from two tapes.)
- 2. Select your source deck by right-clicking on the **Source Type** button (Figure 4.65) under the left monitor.



Figure 4.65: The Source Type Button



3. Under the right monitor, click on the **AutoBatch** button (Figure 4.66) to turn it on.



Figure 4.66: The AutoBatch Button

4. Click inside the **Clip Name** field and enter a short description for the clip.

	Digitized Clip	
Clip	00:00:00:00	Lock
Mark In	00:00:00:00	Cue In
Mark Out	00:00:07:06	Cue Out
Duration	00:00:07:06	- +
lip Name Clip Name	test02	

Figure 4.67: The AutoBatch Button

5. Cue your tape to your start point, and click on the play button under the left monitor (Figure 4.68).

		P	ay Button
		Digitized Clip	
	Clip	00:00:00:00	Lock
Mark In	44 4 45		
Button	Mark In	00:00:00:00	Cue In
Mark	Mark Out	00:00:07:06	Cue Out
Out	Duration	00:00:07:06	- +
Button	Clip Name	test02	

Figure 4.68: The Left Monitor Controls

6. Mark a clip by clicking the **Mark In** and **Mark Out** buttons (previous figure), or press **m** for mark in and the comma key for mark out.



7. Under the right monitor, click on the **New Clip** button (Figure 4.69), or press the period key on the keyboard.



Figure 4.69: The New Clip Button

- 8. Repeat steps 5 and 6 to mark two more clips.
- 9. Click on the **Batch** button on the toolbar (Figure 4.70).



Figure 4.70: The Batch Button

The Batch Digitize window opens across the lower part of the screen (Figure 4.71).

Globe	Caste	er Batch Dig	itize							
a			DemoTape	Select	All	Start	Clip %:	Pit	In Bin	
Total Tir			1	Deselec	t Ali	Stop	f	11	In Timeline	Editor
Approx Spa		d <u>57739</u>		Remove S	elected Man	age Tapes Save	List Total He:		Save Now	
500								OK		
To do list										Parent A X
Icon	Select	State	Name	Tape	Volume	Start	Length	End Components	Compression	User
		Waiting	sample11	DemoTape	VQA_GC	00:02:43:04	00:00:00:16	00:02:43:20 Video Audio 182 Audio 384	V Default (Opti	
		Waiting	sample12	DemoTape	▼QA_GC	00:02:44:12	00:00:00:15	00:02:44:27 Video Audio 182 Audio 384	🕈 Default (Opti	
		Waiting	sample13	DemoTape	VQA_GC	00:02:45:16	00:00:00:18	00:02:46:04 Video Audio 182 Audio 384	🖤 Defauit (Opti	
		Waiting	sample 14	DemoTape	▼QA_GC	00:02:46:26	00:00:00:15	00:02:47:11 Video Audio 182 Audio 384	💙 Default (Opti	
		Waiting	sample15	DemoTape	VQA_GC	00:02:48:02	00:00:00:23	00:02:48:25 Video Audio 182 Audio 384	V Default (Opti	

Figure 4.71: The Batch Digitize Window

You see the clips you logged in the **To do list** bin.

Leave the Batch Digitize window open. You will work in it in the next section of the tutorial.



#### Dragging Picons to the To do list

When the Batch Digitize window is open, you can add clips to the list to be digitized by dragging them from a bin to the **To do list.** You can also drag clips from the **To do list** to a bin to save a shortcut for the clip.

To add clips to the Batch Digitize list, do the following:

1. Locate a linear clip in one of your bins (Figure 4.72).



Figure 4.72: Linear Clips in a Bin

2. Drag-and-drop the clip picon from the bin to the **To do list**.

The clip is listed in the **To do list**, and can be selected for digitizing.



Figure 4.73: The Clip Added to the To do list

At this point, you have a number of clips from at least two different tapes in the **To do list**. You will use these in the next section, so this is a good time to save the batch list. To do this, do the following:

1. Locate the Batch List picon in the Batch Digitize window (Figure 4.74).



Figure 4.74: The Batch List Picon

You will use this picon to save the list. But first you will set this picon to display an image you can recognize.

2. Choose the clip that you want to represent this Batch List.



3. Click on the button in the **Select** column (Figure 4.75) to select the clip. Make sure only one clip is selected.



Figure 4.75: The Select Button

The row for that clip is highlighted in yellow.

4. Right-click on the Batch List picon.

A pop-up menu appears (Figure 4.76).



Figure 4.76: Batch List Picon Pop-Up Menu

#### 5. Select Set Picon to selected clip.

The picon for the clip you selected is now used as the picon for the Batch List (Figure 4.77).

Start		New
Stop		Batch List
Manage Tapes	Save List Total %:	Picon

Figure 4.77: The New Batch List Picon

Now you are ready to save the Batch List.

6. Drag the Batch List picon to the bin where you want to save the list.



The list is saved in the bin.



Figure 4.78: The Batch List in the Bin

Now you can reload the list into the **To do list** at any time by double-clicking on its picon in the bin.

You can also save the Batch List by clicking on the **Save List** button under the Batch List picon (previous figure). It is saved to the bin designated for **Unsaved TM** in the **Global Settings** panel. For information on the **Global Settings** panel, see the "Using Configure Panels" chapter of the *GlobeCaster User Guide*.

#### Using The Batch Digitize Window

Once your clips are added to the **To do list**, the Batch Digitize window is a handy way to organize them and digitize groups of clips. In this part of the tutorial, you will use this window to rename your clips, set compression levels, turn off the audio on one clip, and digitize all the clips from one tape in a group. You will save your digitized clips in a bin.

First you will rename all of your clips that are from a single source tape. You may find it easier to remember names that you give your clips rather than the default names the GlobeCaster Editor assigns when you create them. Here's how to rename them:

1. Right-click in the Name column for the first clip from the tape you are using.

A pop-up menu appears (Figure 4.79).



Figure 4.79: The Rename/Delete Pop-Up Menu

2. Choose **Rename** from the pop-up menu.

The yellow band across the row of the clip you selected turns purple, and a cursor appears at the beginning of the clip name.

3. Type in a new name for the clip and press Enter.

The new name appears in the Name column.

4. Repeat this process for all of the clips from this same tape.

## **224** )))) Chapter 4

Next you will set the compression level for three clips from a single tape. Here's how:

1. Click on the triangular button in the **Compression** column for one of your renamed clips (Figure 4.80).



Figure 4.80: The Compression Button

A pop-up menu listing the compression levels appears (Figure 4.81).



Figure 4.81: The Compression Pop-Up Menu

Time Machine compression levels range from **Default** to **6**. **Default** gives the highest image quality. Moving from **Default** toward **6** gives you progressively more compression, and, thus, less quality.

The GlobeCaster Time Machine uses wavelet compression to digitize video. Wavelet compression offers better video quality for less hard drive space than the standard M-JPEG compression, which most other non-linear editing systems use. Another advantage of wavelet compression is that you won't see as many digital artifacts, such as the pixel blocks that may show up on M-JPEG compressed video. Wavelet compression, even at high compression ratios, retains the look of analog tape.

2. Choose 2 from the pop-up menu.

Time Machine will use a compression level of 2 when it digitizes this clip.

- 3. Click on the compression button for the next renamed clip in the To do list.
- 4. Choose **4** for the compression level.
- 5. Click on the compression button for the next renamed clip in the To do list.
- 6. Choose **6** for the compression level.

TIP: The varying compression levels are provided so you can make choices about image quality versus file size. When you begin a project, you can digitize your clips at a high compression level. Then, once you finish the project and have selected the clips you will actually use, you can re-digitize them at a lower compression level before recording them to your master tape.



You have set compression levels of 2, 4, and 6 for three clips. After you digitize them, you can compare the quality from the different levels of compression. Don't forget to look at one digitized with the **Default** setting, too.

Before you digitize these clips, you will learn how to choose *not* to record the audio for a clip. Here's how:

1. Find the **Components** column of the Batch Digitize window (Figure 4.82).



Figure 4.82: The Components Column

2. Click on the button labeled Audio 1&2 (Figure 4.83).



Figure 4.83: The Audio 1&2 Buttons

The button turns gray, indicating it is turned off. By default, the **Audio 3&4** button is turned off. When you digitize this clip, the audio tracks will not be included. You could also digitize only the audio and not the video for a clip by clicking on the **Video** button to turn it off and leaving the audio buttons on.

Next you will select all of the clips from the source tape you are working with for digitizing. Here's how:

1. Find the Tape List at the top of the Batch Digitize window (Figure 4.84).



Figure 4.84: The Tape List

NOTE: The compression ratio can also be changed in the **Digitize Settings** panel. Access this panel by clicking on the Configure button on the Globe-Caster Editor toolbar and selecting **Digi**tize Settings from the pop-up menu. For information on this panel, see the "Using Configure Panels" chapter in the Globe-Caster User Guide.



2. Click on the name of the tape you have been working from (Figure 4.85). In this tutorial, the example tape is **Tutorial**.



Figure 4.85: Choosing the Tape Name

All the clips from that tape are selected in the **To do list** (Figure 4.86).

Glob	eCaste	r Batch Digi	tize							Store digitized:	
			Reel1	Selec	t All	Start	Clip %:			In Bin	
		00:00:01:07	<ul> <li>Tutorial</li> </ul>	Desele	ct All	Stop			_	In Timeline	Editor
				Remove 5	Selected	Manage Tapes Sav	e List			Save Now	
									OK		
To do list											Parent A X
Icon	Select	State	Name	Таре	Volume	Start	Length	End	Components	Compression	User
	-	Ignored	Сіроо	Reci1	<b>7</b> QA_G	C 00:03:04:17	00:00:00:15	00:03:05:02	Video Audio 182 Audio 384	Pefault (Opti	
	•	Ignored	Clip01	Reel1	V QA_G	C 00:03:06:13	00:00:00:17	00:03:07:00	Video Audio 182 Audio 384	V Default (Opti	
THE THE	n	Ignored	Сіф02	Reel1	₹QA_G	C 00:03:08:09	00:00:00:14	00:03:08:23	Audio 182 Audio 384	Default (Opti	
	m	Ignored	Clip03	Reel1	VQA_G	C 00:03:10:07	00:00:00:19	00:03:10:26	Video Audio 182 Audio 384	V Default (Opti	
	٩	Walting	Clip04	Tutorial	₹QA_G	C 00:03:14:12	00:00:01:07	00:03:15:19	Video Audio 182 Audio 384	V Default (Opti	

Select Button

Figure 4.86: Clips from Tutorial Tape Selected

You can tell which clips are selected for digitizing by looking at the square buttons in the **Select** column. If the button is blue, the clip is selected; if it is gray, the clip is not selected. Also, the **State** of the selected clips is **Waiting**. The **State** of the non-selected clips is **Ignored**.

Another way to select clips is to click the **Select All** button to select all clips in the **To do list**. You can also hold down the **Control** key on your keyboard and click on the **Select** button for the clips you want to select.

Now that you have renamed your clips, set the compression levels, turned off the audio for one clip, and selected all the clips from the tape you are working with, you are ready to digitize this batch of clips. Here's how:

- 1. Make sure the source tape is in the deck you assigned it to.
- 2. Click the **Start** button (Figure 4.87).



Figure 4.87: The Start Button



Time Machine begins digitizing the clips. Two status bars, **Clip** % and **Total** %, tell you the progress of digitizing the current clip and the total batch.

3. When Time Machine finishes digitizing, click on the **In Bin** button in the upper right of the Batch Digitize window.



Figure 4.88: The In Bin Button

This tells Time Machine to save shortcuts to your clips into a bin. You must choose either **In Bin** or **In Timeline** each time you save a batch of digitized clips. In Timeline places them on a timeline in the GlobeCaster Editor. If you want to save the batch to both places you can do so, one at a time.

4. Click on the Save Now button (Figure 4.89).



Figure 4.89: The Save Now Button

Shortcuts for the digitized clips are saved to the bin set for **Unsaved TM** in the **Global Settings** panel. For information on how to use this panel, see the "Using Configure Panels" chapter in the *GlobeCaster User Guide*.

**Where Are The Clips Saved?** Time Machine saves digitized clips to your dedicated Time Machine hard drives inside your GlobeCaster unit. However, shortcuts to the clips can be saved in any bin you wish. When you selected **In Bin** above, for example, shortcuts to the clips were saved in the bin designated in the **Global Settings** panel. You can also drag digitized clip picons from the timeline or the **To do list** to any bin where you want to save a shortcut for the clips.

For most practical purposes, the shortcut picons act just like clips. This is *not* true, however, when it comes to deleting the clips. You can delete shortcuts to the clips in the bins where they are located, but to delete the clips themselves you must navigate to the Time Machine hard drives.

If you delete the clips from the Time Machine hard drives, the shortcuts in the bins will not function on their own; you will have to re-digitize them from the source tape. Don't make the mistake of thinking you have a copy of a clip saved in a bin. The picon in a bin is only a shortcut, as the clips are saved *only* on the Time Machine hard drives.



**NOTE:** You can save as many shortcuts to Time Machine clips in bins as you want. Multiple shortcuts can reference the same audio and video footage on the Time Machine hard drives. Each shortcut can contain different clip properties, such as in and out points, strobe rate, etc. You can access the Time Machine hard drives by parenting up through your bins. This allows you to delete clips or load clips directly from the hard drive. To access the Time Machine hard drives, do the following:

1. In one of the open bins on your screen, click the **A** button in the upper right corner of the bin (Figure 4.90).



Figure 4.90: The System Bin

This opens additional options for bin navigation.

2. Click on the **Parent** button until you get to the **System** bin.

You see four options in the system bin: **Desktop, Logical drives, Time Machine,** and **GlobeCaster** (previous figure).

3. Double-click on the Time Machine icon.

You see an icon of a book (Figure 4.91). This represents the "volume" of Time Machine you are using. Currently there is only one volume.

Time Mac	hines	Parent   A   X				
Icon	Name	Component				
Ø	тму_о	Video+Audi				

Figure 4.91: Volume Icon in Time Machine Bin

4. Double-click on the volume icon.

You see a bin containing picons of your digitized clips (Figure 4.92).

Editor Manual



**NOTE:** These clips are the actual audio and video data only. The Time Machine hard drives do not contain clip properties, such as in and out points, strobe rate, etc. These clip properties are saved in the shortcuts for the clips in the bins on your PC.



Figure 4.92: Digitized Clips on Time Machine Hard Drives

To load your digitized clips into a monitor or onto the timeline, drag the picon from this bin to where you want to load it.

This is where you delete your clips from the Time Machine drives. To do this, right-click on a clip picon and choose **Delete** from the pop-up menu.

When you want to return to the bin you started from, click the **Home** button.

230 Chapter 4 Using

Automated Features Now that you know the basics of digitizing from the timeline and batch digitizing, this section of the tutorial will show you how to put some of these features together and quickly build a digitized timeline from a linear source tape. You will use the **AutoBatch** and **AutoSplice** features to automatically queue clips for digitizing and build a timeline as you log clips.

Here's how:

 Place a linear tape in your source deck and select that deck for the Source Type button under the left monitor. To do this, right-click on the Source Type button (Figure 4.93).



Figure 4.93: The Source Type Button Under the Left Monitor

Choose the source deck from the pop-up menu.

2. Under the right monitor, click on the **AutoBatch** and **AutoSplice** buttons (Figure 4.94) to turn them on.



Figure 4.94: The AutoSplice and AutoBatch Buttons

Turning on **AutoBatch** causes clips to be automatically added to the Batch List in the Batch Digitize window as you log them. Turning on the **AutoSplice** button causes clips to be automatically added to the timeline as you log them.

Editor Manual



Cue your deck up to the place where you want to log clips and click the play button under the left monitor (Figure 4.95).



Figure 4.95: The Left Monitor Controls

3. Log a clip by clicking the **Mark In** and **Mark Out** buttons (previous figure), or by pressing **m** and the comma on your keyboard.

As you log each clip, it appears on the timeline and is sent to the **To do list** in the Batch Digitize window.

4. Repeat step 4 to log four more clips.

You see five clips on the timeline (Figure 4.96).



Figure 4.96: Five Clips on the Timeline

5. Click the **Batch** button on the toolbar (Figure 4.97).



Figure 4.97: The Batch Button



The Batch Digitize window opens across the bottom of the screen (Figure 4.98).

Globe	Caste	er Batch Dig	itize							
Cli Total Tir Approx Spa		a 5 a 00:00:02:27 a 57739	DemoTape	Select Deselect Remove S	All t All elected Mana	Stop Stop Ige Tapes Save	Clip %:		In Bin In Timeline Save Now	Editor
Spa		e <u>6590464</u>						OK		
To do list										Parent A: X
Icon	Select	State	Name	Tape	Volume	Start	Length	End Components	Compression	User
		Waiting	sample11	DemoTape	TQA_GC	00:02:43:04	00:00:00:16	00:02:43:20 Video Audio 182 Audio 364	V Default (Opti	
		Waiting	sample12	DemoTape	<b>▲</b> dv <sup>*</sup> ec	00:02:44:12	00:00:00:15	00:02:44:27 Audio 182 Audio 182 Audio 384	💙 Default (Opti	
		Waiting	sample13	DemoTape	VQA_GC	00:02:45:16	00:00:00:18	00:02:46:04 Video Audio 182 Audio 384	Default (Opti	
		Waiting	sample14	DemoTape	VQA_GC	00:02:46:26	00:00:00:15	00:02:47:11 Video Audio 182 Audio 384	💙 Default (Opti	
		Waiting	sample15	DemoTape	▼QA_GC	00:02:48:02	00:00:00:23	00:02:48:25 Audio 182 Audio 182	🔻 Default (Opti	

Figure 4.98: The Batch Digitize Window

You see the clips you logged in the To do list.

6. Click the **Start** button (Figure 4.99).

Select All	Start	Batch L	list
Deselect All	Stop		'
Remove Selected	Manage Tapes	Save List	

Figure 4.99: The Start Button

Time Machine digitizes your clips. As it digitizes you see a loading bar going up and down in the Batch List picon and in the picon for each clip as it is digitized. You also see the green status bar for Clip % and Total % (Figure 4.100) telling you how far digitizing has progressed for the current clip and the batch as a whole.



Figure 4.100: The Clip % and Total % Status Bars (Solid Green)

When these bars are solid green and the loading bar disappears from the Batch List picon, digitizing is completed.



7. When Time Machine finishes digitizing your clips, click the GlobeCaster Editor button on the right side of the screen to return to the main the GlobeCaster Editor interface.



Figure 4.101: Digitized Clips on the Timeline

Your clips on the timeline are now digitized. You can tell this because they are now dark blue. You can now edit the timeline like any other non-linear timeline.

8. Save the timeline. Neither the timeline or batch list has been saved yet.

Clip Versus Source Timecode Under the left source monitors, you see a set of timecode numbers for the active source. There is an important difference between the timecode of a digitized clip when you select **Clip** as the source and the timecode you see when you select your source deck as the active source. This section explains that difference.

Right-clicking on the **Source Type** button (Figure 4.102) under the left monitor(s) brings up the **Source Type** pop-up menu.



Figure 4.102: Source Type Pop-Up Menu

From here, you select which source type you want to edit in the source monitor.

To understand the difference between Clip and Source timecode, do the following:

- 1. Drag-and-drop a digitized clip onto the timeline.
- 2. Be sure the digitized clip's source tape is in the deck.
- 3. Click the digitized clip in the timeline to select it.



4. Right-click the Source Type button under the source monitor.

The Source Type pop-up menu appears.

5. Select Clip.

The **Source Timecode** sets itself to **00:00:00:00**. This represents an absolute timecode for that digitized clip file (Figure 4.103).



Figure 4.103: Timecode With Clip Selected

This absolute timecode is here to make editing digitized clips easier. However, the timecode that represents the portion of the linear source from which the digitize clip was taken is still present. You can view this timecode by doing the following:

- 1. Click the Source Type button.
- 2. Select the source deck in which your tape is located (**Source A, Source B,** or **Source C**).

A frame from your source tape appears in the source monitor.

- 3. Click the digitized clip in the timeline to select it.
- 4. Click the **Cue In** button under the source monitor.

Editor Manual



The GlobeCaster Editor tells your deck to scrub to the **Mark In** point for the clip on your source tape. The frame you see on the source monitor is the same frame you saw as the first frame of the digitized clip (Figure 4.104).



Figure 4.104: Timecode With Source Selected

Notice that the Source Timecode is the timecode from the linear source, and not the absolute timecode displayed when **Clip** is selected for **Source Type**.

This feature exists so that you can automatically cue a source tape up to the original in point from which the digitized clip was taken. This way you can redigitize the clip if you need to, or adjust the in and out points to digitize a portion of source tape you may have missed the first time.

Chapter 4 236

Logging Sub-clips From A Digitized Clip Once you have a digitized clip, you can log sub-clips from it as though it were a linear source. Here's how:

- 1. Navigate to the bin containing your digitized clip.
- 2. Drag-and-drop the clip's picon into the source monitor (one of the left monitors).

The clip loads. The first frame of the clip appears in the source monitor. The Source Type button changes to read **Clip** (Figure 4.105).



Figure 4.105: The Loaded Digitized Clip

This makes the digitized clip a source. You can now log clips from it as though you were logging clips from a linear source.

3. Click the Play button.

The clip plays.

4. Click the **Mark In** button a little bit before the point where you want the clip to begin.

Leaving a little bit of lead in time on your clip is optional. It can make for easier editing later.

If you know the timecode where you want the clip to begin, you can also mark the in point by typing the timecode into the In Point timecode field and then clicking the **Mark In** button. The GlobeCaster Editor instantly cues the clip to that frame.

5. Click the **Mark Out** button a little bit after the point where you want the clip to end.

If you know the timecode where you want the clip to end, you can also mark the out point by typing the timecode into the Out Point timecode field and

GlobeCaster

then clicking the **Mark Out** button. The GlobeCaster Editor instantly cues the clip to that frame.

A picon of the clip appears as the Clip picon in the toolbar (Figure 4.106). The picon is the first frame of the clip.



Figure 4.106: The Clip in the Toolbar

6. Drag-and-drop the Clip picon onto the timeline.

The clip appears in the timeline (Figure 4.107).



Figure 4.107: The Clip in the Timeline

You can edit the clip just like any other clip.

The GlobeCaster Editor can digitize AVI and WAV files, and use them just like any other clip in the timeline.

Here's what you do:

- 1. Navigate to the bin containing your AVI or WAV file.
- 2. Drag-and-drop the file's picon into the timeline.

The file begins to digitize. As it digitizes, a status bar goes up and down in the Timeline picon (Figure 4.108).



Figure 4.108: The Timeline Picon

Once the file finishes, it appears in the timeline. The clip appears in the  $Video\ 1$  track in the timeline.

You can edit digitized AVI and WAV clips the same way you edit any other digitized clips.

NOTE: You do not create new clip files when you log subclips from a digitized source clip. You are only creating shortcuts that point back to the digitized clip. Because of this, do not delete the digitized source clip. If you do, the sub-clips you created revert to linear clips. You then must re-digitize these clips from the linear source.

Digitizing AVI And WAV Files

**NOTE:** If you are digitizing a WAV file, no event is visible. Click the + button to the left of the **Video 1** track name. Audio tracks appear below the **Video 1** track. These are your digitized audio tracks.

Chapter 4 238

Changing The Playback Speed You can change the playback speed of a digitized clip. This is something you can't do with linear clips.

Here's what you do:

- 1. Load your digitized clip into the timeline.
- 2. Right-click on the clip.

The Timeline Event pop-up menu appears (Figure 4.109).

Delete Event
Delete Selected Events
Snap
Select All
Select Track
Select None
Invert Track
Invert Selection
Select From Here
Select From Here on This Track
Evenend Tree
Expand Tree
Collapse Tree
Properties
Higher Priority
Turn into Framestore
Digitize to Time Machine
Add to Batch Digitize
Show Audio Waveform
Export Audio
Export to AVI
Ungroup Audio & Video Events
Show filenames upon selection
Flatten Event

Figure 4.109: The Timeline Event Pop-up Menu

Use this pop-up to edit various properties of the timeline and change timeline viewing options.

3. Select Properties.



The **Clip Main Properties** panel appears in the upper left corner of the interface (Figure 4.110).

Clip Main Properties		
Reel Exte	mal Source	
Clip Name		
Record V	A1 A2 A3 A4	
Audio Edit Lock 🚺 In	Out	
Play Speed	Normal 1.00	Play Speed Window
Loop Count 1		
Rate		
Compression Ratio		
Video Run Field Freez	e Frame Strobe	
Tape Color Correction	Setup Use	
NLR Color Correction	Setur Use	
Use tape defi	ault correction	
Set as tape de	fault correction	
Correct all cli	ps on this tape	

Figure 4.110: The Clip Main Properties Panel

The properties window shows the current Reel, Clip Name and you can use this panel to edit properties of a selected clip. In this case, you want to change this clip's playback speed.

4. Click in the **Play Speed** window (previous figure).

240 Chapter 4

NOTE: When you are working with nonlinear clips, the GlobeCaster Editor automatically accounts for changes you make to the playback speed and loop count. For example, say you set the playback speed for a clip to play in reverse. When you scrub through that clip on the timeline, you see the end of the clip first. Then it plays back to the beginning of the clip as you scrub through the clip on the timeline. And, if you open an advanced editing mode, such as Trim Clip, what you see in the monitor labeled First Frame, Selected Clip is actually the last frame of the clip, since that is what you see first when the clip is played in reverse.

### The **Play Speed** pop-up menu appears (Figure 4.111).



Figure 4.111: The Play Speed Pop-Up Menu

Use this pop-up to select the playback speed for the selected digitized clip. The first six options, from **8x Rev** (eight times faster than normal speed in reverse) to **Quarter Rev** (one-fourth normal speed in reverse), play the clip in reverse. The last six options, from **Quarter Fwd** (one-fourth normal speed) to **8x Fwd** (eight times faster than normal) play the clip forward.

5. Select the playback speed you want.

The clip automatically changes its length on the timeline to match the new playback speed.



**Looping A Clip** You can make a digitized clip play in a loop. This is something you can't do with a linear clip.

Here's what you do:

- 1. Load your digitized clip onto the timeline.
- 2. Right-click on the clip.

The Timeline Event pop-up menu appears (Figure 4.112).

Delete Event
Delete Selected Events
Snap
0-1
Select All
Select Track
Select None
Invert Track
Invert Selection
Select From Here
Select From Here on This Track
Expand Tree
Expand All
Collapse Tree
Properties
Higher Priority
Turn into Framestore
Digitize to Time Machine
Add to Batch Digitize
Show Audio Waveform
Export Audio
Export to AVI
Ungroup Audio & Video Events
Show filenames upon selection
Flatten Event

Figure 4.112: The Timeline Event Pop-Up Menu

Use this pop-up to edit various properties of the timeline and change timeline viewing options.

3. Select Properties.



The **Clip Main Properties** panel appears in the upper left corner of the interface (Figure 4.113).

Clip Main Properties	1
Reel     External Source       Clip Name     Play Speed       Audio Edit Lock     In       Out     Out       Play Speed     Normal       Loop Count     1       Rate     1       Compression Ratio     N/A	Loop Count Window
Tape Color Correction     Setup     Use       NLR Color Correction     Setup     Use       Use tape default correction     Set as tape default correction       Correct all clips on this tape	

Figure 4.113: The Clip Main Properties Panel

Use this panel to edit properties of a selected clip. In this case, you want to change this clip's Loop Count.

To make a clip loop, you change the value in the **Loop Count** window (previous figure). The number you enter is the number of times the clip plays. The default is **1**.

4. Change the value in the loop count window to **2**.

The GlobeCaster Editor sets the clip to play in a loop twice. Notice the clip in the timeline doubles in size.



**Building A Hybrid Timeline** In some situations, you may want to build a timeline that uses both non-linear clips (digitized on Time Machine) and linear clips (from one of your source decks). This type of timeline is called a hybrid timeline. The GlobeCaster Editor is designed so that you can use the same tools to edit linear and non-linear clips.

> One situation where you may want to build a hybrid timeline is when you want to use a long segment of tape without digitizing it, but you want to add effects and transitions at the beginning or end of the timeline. This is the type of timeline you will build in this part of the tutorial.

What You Will<br/>NeedYou'll need to make sure you have a few things ready so you can follow along with<br/>the project:

• At least one source VTR connected.

You'll be working with clips from tape, so this is a must.

• At least one source tape with timecode and video recorded.

You'll be using this to provide linear clips for your timeline.

• At least one digitized clip on your Time Machine hard drives.

You'll also use a couple of video stills and DSKs (downstream keys). You can find some examples of these in the bins, or you can use your own.

**Building The Timeline** In this tutorial, the example timeline has stills and non-linear clips at the beginning and the end, and a linear clip in the middle. There is also an overlay in the form of a credit roll on top of the linear clip.

Begin the timeline with a fade up from black, so matte black is the first item on the timeline.

1. Navigate to the **GlobeCaster\Bins\Clips** bin, and find the picon labeled **Matte Black** (Figure 4.114).



Figure 4.114: The Matte Black Picon in the Clips Bin



2. Double-click the Matte Black picon to add it to the timeline (Figure 4.115).

1	01:00:00:00	01:00:	:01:00
Video 1			

Figure 4.115: Matte Black Added to the Timeline

You only need this clip to last for 1 second. If you see a different duration for the clip on your timeline, you'll need to trim the clip with the GlobeCaster Editor's **Trim Clip** editing feature. Here's how:

- 1. If the Matte Black clip is not selected, click on it to select it.
- 2. Click the Trim Clip button (Figure 4.116) on the GlobeCaster Editor toolbar

	Timeline	Trim Clip	2 3 4
Trim Clip Button		Trim Edit	Add Clip
		Slip Src	Trans Edit
	Contraction of the local division of the loc	Slide	View
	Save	New	Ripple

Figure 4.116: The Trim Clip Button

**TIP:** The keyboard shortcut for placing a 1 second matte black clip on the timeline is the **k** key. Make sure you are in Add Clip mode, press the **k** key, and the matte black clip appears on the timeline at the location of the Position Bar.



First Frame, Selected Clip	Last Frame, Selected Clip
In 00:00:00 Revert	Out 00:01:00 Revert

The **Trim Clip** monitors and controls appear (Figure 4.117).

Duration Field

Figure 4.117: The Trim Clip Monitors and Controls

- 3. Adjust the duration of the clip to 1 second by typing **00:00:01:00** into the **Duration** field under the left monitor, or clicking on the + or buttons next to the **Duration** field.
- 4. Click the Add Clip button to return to the default editing mode.

Saving The This is a This is a habit to

This is a good time to save the timeline. Saving your work frequently is a good habit to develop. If a project doesn't seem to be heading in the right direction, you can simply go back to an earlier version and start from there.

Before you save the timeline, rename it.

1. Find the Timeline picon in the blue Timeline Controls on the toolbar (Figure 4.118).



Figure 4.118: The Timeline Picon

# **246** )))) Chapter 4

2. Right-click on the picon and choose **Rename** from the pop-up menu (Figure 4.119).



Figure 4.119: Choosing Rename from the Pop-Up Menu

A cursor appears in the name on the Timeline picon in the toolbar.

3. Type in hybrid01 and press Enter on your keyboard

The new timeline name appears on the Timeline picon (Figure 4.110).

Timeline	Trim Clip	2 3 4
-	Trim Edit	Add Clip
hybrid01	Slip Src	Trans Edit
	Slide	View
Save	New	Ripple

Figure 4.120: The New Name for the Timeline

The file extension .ptl (The GlobeCaster Editor timeline) is added to the file name.

- 4. Navigate to a bin where you would like to save the timeline (Use the **Top Bins** and **Btm Bins** buttons to quickly open bins if necessary).
- 5. Drag the timeline picon to the bin and drop it.

The timeline is saved there.

As you continue to work on the project, you can save future versions as **hybrid02**, **hybrid03**, etc.

Adding The Next Clip At this point you are ready to add the next clip. The example uses a digitized clip that's an animated version of one of the stills found in the bins. Feel free to use a digitized clip of your own if you have one, or you can use any still. If you use a digitized clip, make sure it has a duration of at least 5 seconds.



1. Navigate to the **Bins/Stills/Test** folder, and find the **\_GCLogo.tfs** picon (Figure 4.121).



Figure 4.121: Picon for the GlobeCaster Logo Still

2. Drag- and-drop the picon onto the **Video 2** track of the timeline, dropping it so that it begins at **01:00:00:02** (Figure 4.122).

	01:00:00	01:00:02:00 X
Video 1		
Video 2		
	j	

Figure 4.122: Adding the Second Clip to the Timeline

3. If necessary, click the **Trim Clip** button again and adjust the duration of the clip until it is at least **2** seconds.

Now you will add a dissolve.



4. Right-click on the clip you just dragged onto the timeline and choose **Create Dissolve** from the pop-up menu (Figure 4.123).





You see a dissolve from black to the clip on the FX track of the timeline (Figure 4.124).



Figure 4.124: The Dissolve Added to the Timeline

**Checking** Before going any further, check this edit. **The Edit**


1. Turn on View mode by clicking the **View** button (Figure 4.125).



Figure 4.125: The View Button

2. Click the **First Frame** button to rewind the timeline, then press the **Play** button (Figure 4.126).



Figure 4.126: The First Frame and Play Buttons

When you select View and play back the timeline, you see selected events that involve non-linear clips only, as this timeline does so far. After you view the edit, return to the default editing mode by clicking on the **Add Clip** button.

At this point, you are ready to add your clip from tape. If you need more information on topics such as logging clips, naming tapes, and assigning source decks, see "Linear Editing" on page 182.

Adding A

Linear Clip

We worked with the Source A deck in this project. To make it easy to follow along, you may want to also assign your source deck as Source A. (For information on how to do this, see "Assigning Source Decks" on page 184).

- 1. Make sure you are in **Add Clip** mode (click on the button on the toolbar if it is not on).
- 2. Put the tape with your footage into your source deck (making sure that it is powered up and connected to GlobeCaster, of course).
- 3. Use the transport controls under the monitor labeled **Source A** to play back the source tape (Figure 4.127).



Figure 4.127: The Transport Controls for the Source A Deck

250 Chapter 4

- 4. When you see a good place to start the clip, press the Mark In button.
- 5. Continue playback of the tape, then press Mark Out to end the clip.

Make sure your clip has duration of at least 20-25 seconds.

Source Versus Timeline Timecode Next to the **Mark In** and **Mark Out** buttons under the **Source Deck A** monitor, you see timecode numbers. These timecode numbers are the actual location of the clip on the *source tape*. Be sure not to confuse these timecode numbers with those under the output (right) monitor, which represent the position of clip on the *timeline*.

When you click the **Mark In** button, the GlobeCaster Editor creates a picon for the clip using the first frame of the clip (Figure 4.128).



Figure 4.128: The Clip Picon

Before you add this clip to the timeline, rename it.

6. Right-click on the Clip picon, and select **Rename** from the pop-up menu (Figure 4.129).

	Properties Life	t [ Undo ]
Rename	Properties	Redo
Menu —	Rename	Only Disk
Option	Delete	Jse Freeze
	Set Picon	Batch

Figure 4.129: Choosing Rename from the Pop-Up Menu

A cursor appears at the bottom of the picon.

7. Type in a new name for the clip, such as **B Roll**, and press **Enter** on your keyboard.

The Clip Picon displays the new name (Figure 4.130).



Figure 4.130: The Renamed Clip Picon

At this point, you are ready to add the clip to your timeline.



8. Drag-and-drop the clip picon onto the **Video 1** track of the timeline, making sure it overlaps the previous clip by about 1 second (Figure 4.131).



Figure 4.131: Adding the New Clip

Next, add a SMPTE wipe to this edit.

- 9. Navigate to the GlobeCaster\Bins\FX\Wipes\ folder.
- 10. Select the **\_SMPTE0011NTSC.tfs** picon (Figure 4.132).



Figure 4.132: The Picon for the SMPTE Wipe

# **252** )))) Chapter 4

11. Drag the picon to the **FX** track of the timeline, and drop it at the in point of the B roll you just added (Figure 4.133).



Figure 4.133: Adding the SMPTE Wipe

**Checking** Go ahead and take a look at this edit. Since this edit involves a clip from a tape machine, the process is a little different than with the last edit you reviewed.

1. Click on the **Timeline** button in the Main Controls (Figure 4.134) to turn it on.

Timeline -	Timeline	Track 1	Video A	1 A2	Audio Scrub
Button	Recorder	00:00:1	9:28		Lock
	Source				
	N/A	Pause	d 🚺	Eject	All Stop

Figure 4.134: The Timeline Button

2. Click on the **First Frame** button to rewind the timeline, then click on the **Play** button (Figure 4.135).



Figure 4.135: The First Frame and Play Buttons

The timeline plays back, except for the B roll clip, which is replaced by that deck's current output.

**Adding** To complete the project, you will add a few more non-linear events. First, add an overlay to the B roll clip.

1. Navigate to the GlobeCaster\Bins\CG\Projects folder.





2. Find the **\_PAGE0001.tfx** picon (Figure 4.136).



Figure 4.136: The Title Roll Picon

This picon represents an overlay.

3. Drag-and-drop the picon onto the timeline a second or two after the previous effect ends (Figure 4.137).

	01:00:00:00 01:00:19:27
+	
	Million Chart
FX	
DSK	Contraction Contraction Contraction
	i

Overlay on DSK Track

Figure 4.137: Adding the Overlay to the Timeline

The effect appears on a new track labeled **DSK** (downstream key). Next you will add one more clip and effect.



4. Drag-and-drop a digitized clip (or a still from the **GlobeCaster\Bins\Stills** directory) onto the **Video 2** track. Make sure it overlaps the end of the B Roll clip for 1 second (Figure 4.138).

	The Last Clip	
	/	
	01:00:00 01:00:19:29	Ì
+		
[+Video 2	Manual Live_07.02.2001_14.42.00	
FX		l
DSK	US//U_USUU Cytorpenk Webster	l
·		

Figure 4.138: Adding the Last Clip

5. Navigate to the **GlobeCaster\Bins\FX\Wipes** bin, and find the FlashWhite Wipe (Figure 4.139).



Figure 4.139: The Flash White Wipe Picon

Editor Manual



6. Drag the picon to the **FX** track and drop it at the in point of the previous track (Figure 4.140).

 01:00:00:02
 01:00:19:28

 +-Video 1
 B Roll

 -Video 2
 Live 07.02.2001 14.42.00

 -FX
 S

 DSK
 Ofergent

The Last Effect

Figure 4.140: Adding the Last Effect

**Final Check** This completes the timeline, so you wil

.l review it one final time.

Click on the **First Frame** button in the Main Controls to rewind the timeline, then click on the **Play** button (Figure 4.141).



Figure 4.141: The First Frame and Play Buttons

The timeline plays back, except for the B roll clip, which is replaced by that deck's current output.

You have now built a hybrid timeline, and seen how to combine non-linear and linear clips. Aside from the physical limitations imposed by playback from a tape source, the GlobeCaster Editor allows you to use the same set of tools for both linear and non-linear clips.

**Wrapping Up** In this tutorial, you learned how to digitize clips on the timeline, how to use the Batch Digitize window, how to log sub-clips from a digitized clip, how to digitize AVI and WAV files, how to change playback speed and loop count for a clip, and how to build a hybrid timeline. You now are familiar with the basics of editing in the GlobeCaster Editor. To polish off your editing skills, read the tutorial "Using Advanced Editing Modes" on page 256. Other tutorials teach you how to do specific kinds of projects, such as "Using Advanced Editing Modes" on page 256.

**256** Chapter 4

### Using Advanced Editing Modes

When you log clips or build a timeline with the GlobeCaster Editor, usually you have the **Add Clip** button selected (Figure 4.142).

Timeline	Trim Clip	234	۸dd
No. of Concession, Name	Trim Edit	Add Clip -	
	Slip Src	Trans Edit	Buttor
	Slide	View	
Save	New	Ripple	

Figure 4.142: The Add Clip Button

This is the GlobeCaster Editor's default editing mode, which is similar to the 1.2 version of the GlobeCaster Editor. But GlobeCaster software has added five advanced editing modes designed for quick and precise editing. Generally you use these modes once you already have clips on a timeline and want to fine tune your edits.

This tutorial teaches you how to use the five editing modes:

- Trim Clip
- Trim Edit
- Slip Source
- Slide
- Transition Edit

The advanced editing modes are used for linear or non-linear editing. When working with linear clips, turn on **Tape Scrub** in the **Editor Options** panel if you want the monitors to update as you adjust the clips (see "Editor Options Panel" on page 93 for information on how to do this).

When you digitize clips with **Time Machine**, 1 second is added to each end of the clip to give you trimming room. In the advanced editing modes, the monitors display the true in and out frames of the clip as marked, not the frames from the extra trimming room.

In this tutorial you will work with each advanced editing mode. The tutorial also explains when to use each mode, and how to use some of the other tools you will encounter when using the editing modes.

Editor Manual



How Many MonitorsShould I Use?When you open the GlobeCaster Editor, you see two monitors at the top of the screen (Figure 4.143).



Figure 4.143: The GlobeCaster Editor with Two-Monitor View Selected

By default, the GlobeCaster Editor starts up in **Add Clip** mode. The two monitors are set to display **Source** (Deck) **A** and the **Timeline**, along with transport controls appropriate for the display.

The GlobeCaster Editor allows you to see three or four monitors, which you may want to do if you have multiple source VTRs. You can switch these monitors on and off with the Monitor View Buttons (Figure 4.144).

Timeline	Trim Clip	2 3 4	Monitor
Contraction of the local division of the loc	Trim Edit	Add Clip	VIEW
	Slip Src	Trans Edit	Duttona
	Slide	View	
Save	New	Ripple	

Figure 4.144: The Monitor View Buttons



When you select **3**, the GlobeCaster Editor displays the output (the default is **Timeline**) in the right monitor and your selected input sources in the other monitors (Figure 4.145).



Figure 4.145: The GlobeCaster Editor with Three-Monitor View Selected

The third monitor opens over the top left bin.

When you select **4**, the GlobeCaster Editor displays the output (the default is **Timeline**) in the right monitor and your selected input sources in the other monitors (Figure 4.146).



Figure 4.146: The GlobeCaster Editor with Four-Monitor View Selected

The fourth monitor opens over the top right bin.



So far, this tutorial has only looked at the monitors while the GlobeCaster Editor is in **Add Clip** mode. If you select a different mode, such as **Trim Edit**, the functions of the monitors change (Figure 4.147).



Figure 4.147: Four-Monitor View in Trim Edit Mode

In this case, the monitors now work in pairs. The two monitors on the right show you the first and last frame of a clip you have selected on the timeline, while the two monitors on the left show you the first and last frame of the preceding clip.

Furthermore, the monitors that are both ends of a clip are joined by a continuous line of sprocket holes (Figure 4.148).

First Frame, Preceding Clip	Last Frame, Preceding Clip	First Frame, Selected Clip	Last Frame, Selected Clip
in	Out +=:: Reven	In Contraction Revert	Out ********* Rever
Ouration ++1++1++	COOP EAR 00:00:02:000 + +	Duration::	

Figure 4.148: Sprocket Holes Displaying the Beginning and End of a Clip

**Viewing Bins** Seeing all four monitors at once is usually more convenient, but sometimes you may need quick access to the bins that the two extra monitors replace. You can quickly open these bins by clicking the **Top Bins** button (Figure 4.149).

260 Chapter 4

**NOTE:** If your monitor and video card support it, you might consider using a larger screen size (1600x1200 or larger) for your GlobeCaster Editor display. This allows you to use the three- or four-monitor view modes all the time, while still leaving space for open bins, and even a larger timeline.

> Transport Controls



Figure 4.149: The Top Bins Button

When you click the **Top Bins** button, the GlobeCaster Editor returns to twomonitor view mode, and the top left and right bins reappear. When you finish with the bins, you can click the **Top Bins** button again to return the GlobeCaster Editor to the three- or four-monitor view mode.

Regardless of how many monitors you choose to display, there is always a set of pale red buttons directly below some or all of the monitors (Figure 4.150).

	Source Deck A	
Source A	00:08:37:24	Lock
44 4 45		
Mark In	::	Cue In
Mark Out	::	Cue Out
Duration	::	- +
Clip Name	sample07	

Figure 4.150: Transport Controls

These are the transport controls. These controls function slightly differently in the various editing modes. This is explained in the following sections about each editing mode. Controls that are ghosted out do not function in the editing mode you selected.



Here are descriptions of the basic controls and how they function (in order from left to right):



**Jog Back 10 Frames**—Moves back or trims 10 frames at a time



Ш

IÞ

5₽

**Jog Back 5 Frames**—Moves back or trims five frames at a time

**Jog Back 1 Frame**—Moves back or trims one frame at a time

**Pause**—Puts deck in Pause mode, pausing playback if the deck is rolling, or spooling the tape so it is ready to play if the deck is stopped

**Jog Forward 1 Frame**—Moves ahead or trims one frame at a time

**Jog Forward 5 Frames**—Moves ahead or trims five frames at a time



**Jog Forward 10 Frames**—Moves ahead or trims 10 frames at a time

Trim Clip ModeTrim Clip mode is designed for trimming the in and out points of a single clip.In this section of the tutorial, you will build a simple timeline, then experiment

In this section of the tutorial, you will build a simple timeline, then experiment with the Trim Clip controls.

1. Start with a new timeline, and drag two clips back-to-back on to the **Video 1** track (Figure 4.151).



Figure 4.151: Adding Clips to the Timeline

2. Select the second clip you added by clicking on it.



3. Click the **Trim Clip** button (Figure 4.152).



Figure 4.152: The Trim Clip Button

When you click the button, the monitors switch from displaying sources to displaying the first and last frames of the clip you selected (Figure 4.153).



Figure 4.153: Trim Clip Mode

If you look at the transport controls, you can tell quite a bit about your clip.

Under the left monitor is a field labeled **In**, and under the right monitor is one labeled **Out**. These are your in and out timecode numbers for the clip on the current timeline.

Also under the left monitor is a field labeled **Duration**. This represents the amount of time the clip occupies on your timeline.

To trim the clip, do one of the following:



• Click the - or + buttons next to the **Duration** field to change the duration of the clip in 1 second (30 frame) intervals (Figure 4.154).



Figure 4.154: Changing the Duration of a Clip

• Click one of the Jog/Trim buttons to increase or decrease the in and out points by **1**, **5** or **10** frames at a time (Figure 4.155).

		Jog/Trir	n Buttons
In	00:00:02:29	Revert	Out 00:00:05:25 Revert
<	<b>∢I II IÞ 5Þ</b>		
Loop Clip	::	- +	
Duration	00:00:02:26	• •	

Figure 4.155: Changing the In and Out Points with the Jog/Trim Buttons

• Type in a new duration directly by clicking in the **Duration** field, typing the new duration, and pressing **Enter** (Figure 4.156).

	Duration	n Field			
In	00:00:02:	29 Revert	Out	00: 00: 05: 25	Revert
Loop Clip	::	+			
Duration	00:00:02:	26 +			

Figure 4.156: Changing the Duration of a Clip from the Duration Field

Under the left monitor is the **Loop Clip** button. This is a tool that allows you to play non-linear clips in a continuous loop so you can see them repeatedly as you adjust the in and out points. You can use the **-** or **+** buttons or type a number into the timecode field to set how much time before and after the clip the loop plays. For example, if the clip duration is 5 seconds and you type in 1 second in the Loop Clip timecode field, the loop plays the clip plus 1 second before and 1 second after the clip, for a total of 7 seconds. After you have set the length of the loop, click the **Loop Clip** button to play the loop. To stop the loop playing, click the **Loop Clip** button again, or click the stop or pause buttons in the transport controls.

So far, you have worked on the second clip on the timeline. Now you will play with the first one a bit.

**NOTE:** The Loop Clip function does not work for linear clips.



- 1. Click on the first clip on the timeline.
- 2. Click on the + button next to the **Duration** field.

Hmm. Nothing happens. That is because increasing this clip's duration would cause its out point to be *after* the second clip's in point. Since Trim Clip mode is for trimming one clip at a time, it does not allow you to affect the duration of clips other than the selected clip.

Next you will look at what happens when the clips are on different tracks. First, you need to add a third clip to the timeline.

3. Drag another clip and drop it onto the **Video 2** track so that its in point is the same as the previous clip's out point (Figure 4.157).



Figure 4.157: Adding the Third Clip to the Video 2 Track

- 4. Click the third clip to select it.
- 5. Click the Jog/Trim 10 Frames Back button (Figure 4.158).

/			, Du	UN	_	_	_		_						
In	00:00:02	: 29	Re	evert				Out	00	: 00	: 05:	25	F	Reve	rt
		5►	10				10	₹5	-	П		5►	10	•	
Loop Clip			-	1	FS										
Duration	00:00:02:	: 26	-	1 -	e II										

Figure 4.158: Moving the Clip's In Point

You should have no trouble moving the third clip's in point to before the second clip's out point since they occupy different tracks.

**Trim Edit Mode** When you need to change the edits between two clips you may want to use **Trim Edit** mode.



1. Start with a new timeline, and drag two clips back-to-back onto the **Video 1** track (Figure 4.159).



Figure 4.159: Adding Clips to the Timeline

- 2. Select the second clip by clicking on it.
- 3. Click the **Trim Edit** button (Figure 4.160).



Figure 4.160: The Trim Edit Button

The left monitor shows the last frame of the previous clip, and the right monitor shows the first frame of the selected clip (Figure 4.161).



Figure 4.161: Trim Edit Mode

**NOTE:** Switching to three-monitor view adds the first frame of the previous clip. Four-monitor view adds both the previous clip's first frame and the selected clip's last frame.

## **266** )))) Chapter 4

In this example, you will move the edit by making the selected clip begin 8 frames earlier.

4. Under the right monitor, labeled First Frame, Selected Clip, click on the Jog/ Trim 5 Frames Back button (Figure 4.162).



Figure 4.162: The Jog/Trim 5 Frames Back and Jog/Trim 1 Frame Back Buttons

The edit moves back 5 frames. In the example, the in timecode of the selected clip goes from **00:00:07:10** to **00:00:07:05**. The out timecode of the preceding clip also changes to **00:00:07:05**.

5. Click three times on the Jog/Trim 1 Frame Back button (previous figure).

The in timecode for the selected clip and the out timecode of the preceding clip now read **00:00:07:02**.

You have moved the edit 8 frames earlier.

#### **Looping Edits**

If you look at the transport controls (Figure 4.163), you see that they are different than in **Trim Clip** mode.

◀ ◀10 ◀5	<b>∢I II I▶ 5</b> ▶	< <10 <5	<b>∢I</b> II I▶ 5▶	
Loop Edit	00:00:02:00	 Loop Clip		- +
		Duration	00:00:08:07	- +

Figure 4.163: Trim Edit Mode Transport Controls

**NOTE:** The monitors update to show you the new in and out frames. In this case, however, because you are working with matte clips you do not see a change.



Under the left monitor there is a button called **Loop Edit** (previous figure). When working with non-linear clips, this feature allows you to view the edit repeatedly as you adjust it.

To use the **Loop Edit** button, do the following:

Edit function does not work for linear clips. 1. Clie

NOTE: The Loop

- 1. Click on the second clip of the edit you want to loop.
- 2. In the Loop Edit timecode field, type in the length of time that you want to include in the loop before and after the edit itself. Or, use the and + buttons to decrease or increase the length by 1-second intervals.

For example, we typed in **00:00:07:00** for our Loop Edit timecode. This means the loop plays 7 seconds before and 7 seconds after the edit.

Out	00:00:05:2	Rev	ert		00:00:05:22	Re	evert
◀ ◀10 ◀5	<b>⊲</b> I II I► 5			<ul><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li><li></li></ul>	<b>⊲</b> I II I► 5		
Loop Edit	00:00:02:00		+	Loop Clip	::	1	+
				Duration	00:00:08:07	1.00	+

Figure 4.164: Setting the Loop Edit Time

3. Click the **Loop Edit** button.

The button lights up and the selected portion of the timeline, including the edit, plays in a continuous loop.

4. To end the loop, click the **Loop Edit** button again, or click the stop or pause buttons in the transport controls.

Slip Src (Source) Mode If you get all your clips on the timeline and then decide you want a clip to start or end several frames earlier or later, you can use Slip Source mode to adjust it. In Slip Source, you can change the in and out points of the clip without changing its duration or position on the timeline. It works by changing which part of a clip is used, slipping it forward or backward.

To use Slip Source mode, do the following:



1. Start with a new timeline and drag three clips back-to-back onto the **Video 1** track (Figure 4.165).



Figure 4.165: Adding Clips to the Timeline

- 2. Select one of the clips by clicking on it.
- 3. Click the **Slip Src** button (Figure 4.166).



Figure 4.166: The Slip Src Button

The GlobeCaster Editor enters Slip Source mode, and you see the first and last frames of the selected clip in the monitors (Figure 4.167).



Figure 4.167: Slip Source Mode



4. Click one of the **Jog/Trim** buttons to change the in point of the clip's source timecode.

You see the in point and out point of the clip change together. The duration and the rest of the timeline are not affected.

The Roll And Slide Edit Buttons By default, when you activate Slip Source mode the **Roll** and **Slide Edit** options from the **Editor Options** panel (Figure 4.168) are selected.



Figure 4.168: The Roll and Slide Edit Buttons on the Editor Options Panel

These buttons affect the behavior of the mouse, so that you can perform the same action with the mouse as with the transport controls. The **Roll** button causes the mouse to behave like Slip Source mode, slipping the in and out points of the clip without changing its length or position on the timeline. **Slide Edit** causes the mouse to behave like Slide mode when you click on the trimming handle of a clip.

If you don't want to use the mouse this way, you can change the **Roll** setting to **Move** and the **Slide Edit** function to **Trim Clip** on the **Editor Options** panel (see "Editor Options Panel" on page 93 for more information on these functions).

**NOTE:** Slip Source mode requires only the two-monitor view. If you select the fourmonitor view, the middle two monitors are in Slip Source mode and the outer two monitors are in Slide mode.

270 Chapter 4 Slide Mode

Sometimes you may want to change the clips immediately preceding and following the selected clip, without changing the duration of the selected clip. This is easy to do with the Slide editing mode.

Start with a fresh timeline once again, and drag five clips back-to-back on to the **Video 1** track (Figure 4.169).



Figure 4.169: Adding Clips to the Timeline

- 1. Select the middle clip by clicking on it.
- 2. Click the **Slide** button (Figure 4.170).



Figure 4.170: The Slide Button





This puts the GlobeCaster Editor into Slide mode (Figure 4.171).

Figure 4.171: Slide Mode

You see transport controls, a **Revert** button, a field displaying the out point of the preceding clip under the left monitor, and another field with the in point of the following clip under the right monitor. Also notice that the clip you selected does not appear at all.

3. Click the Jog/Trim 10 Frames Forward button.

The selected clip moves 10 frames forward on the timeline. This makes the preceding clip 10 frames longer, and the following clip 10 frames shorter. The duration of the selected clip is not changed. The rest of the timeline is also unchanged.

Using Four Monitors In Slide Mode If you use the four-monitor view in Slide mode, the GlobeCaster Editor actually provides a combination of Slide and Slip Source functions (shown in the Figure 4.172).



Figure 4.172: Using Four Monitors in Slide Mode

The middle two monitors are in Slip Source mode, and the outer two monitors are in Slide mode. So, you can perform Slide functions by using the transport controls

272 Chapter 4

under the first (far left) monitor, and Slip Source functions on the selected clip by using the transport controls under the second monitor.

Trans(ition) Edit Mode

So far this tutorial has covered a wide variety of editing tools, but it hasn't yet covered timelines that contain effects other than cuts, such as dissolves, wipes, or warps. There is an editing mode designed specifically to adjust such edits, and it is called Transition Edit mode (Trans Edit).

To experiment with Transition Edit mode, you need a simple timeline.

1. Start with a new timeline and drag three clips to alternating tracks, making sure the clips overlap (Figure 4.173).

+ - Video 1	01:00:00:00 Live_07.05.2001_11.10.33	01:00:15:22 X
+	Live_07.05.2001_11.11.02	
Duration 00: 00: 06: 13		



Next, you will create a dissolve between the first two clips.



2. Right-click the first clip in the overlapped area and choose **Create Dissolve** from the pop-up menu (Figure 4.174).



Figure 4.174: Choosing Create Dissolve

A dissolve appears on the **FX** track (Figure 4.175).

+Video 1	01:00:00:00	01:00:15:22 X
FX	Live	07.05.2001_11.11.02
Duration 00: 00: 06: 13	1	

Figure 4.175: The New Dissolve on the Timeline

If you look carefully at the dissolve, you see that it begins exactly where the clips begin to overlap on the timeline, and ends exactly where the clips stop overlapping.

Chapter 4

NOTE: The fourmonitor mode is required to use Transition Edit mode, and is automatically selected when you click the **Trans** Edit button. 3. Click the **Trans Edit** button.



Figure 4.176: The Trans Edit Button

The GlobeCaster Editor enters Transition Edit mode (Figure 4.177).



Figure 4.177: Transition Edit Mode

Next you will adjust the dissolve you created.

4. Click the second clip to select it.

When editing a transition in Transition Edit mode, the clip that *begins* at the transition must be the selected clip, and the clip that *ends* at the transition is the preceding clip. Therefore, the selected clip must be at least the second one on the timeline.

TransportFollowing is an explanation of the transport controls for the preceding clipControls, Part I(Figure 4.178).



Figure 4.178: The Transport Controls for the Preceding Clip

The first (left-most) monitor displays the frame of the preceding clip at the beginning of the transition. This is called the **Transition Out Frame**.



The second monitor displays the last frame of the preceding clip. This is the **Out Frame**.

There are three ways to edit the effect with these controls:

• Click one of the **Jog/Trim buttons** under the **Transition Out** (far left) monitor (Figure 4.179).



Jog/Trim Buttons

Figure 4.179: The Jog/Trim Buttons Under the Transition Out Monitor

These buttons make the effect happen earlier or later on the timeline. The preceding clip's duration and out point stay fixed, while the in point of the selected clip and duration of the transition change.

You can also set a new Transition Out frame by typing a timecode in the **Trn Out** (Transition Out) field and pressing **Enter** on your keyboard.

 Click one of the Jog/Trim buttons under the **Out** (second from left) monitor (Figure 4.180).



Jog/Trim Buttons

Figure 4.180: The Jog/Trim Buttons Under the Out Monitor

These buttons increase or decrease the duration of the transition. The duration and in point of the selected clip remain the same, while the out point of the preceding clip and duration of the transition change.

You can also set a new Out frame by typing a timecode in the **Trn Out** (Transition Out) field and pressing **Enter** on your keyboard.

## **276** )))) Chapter 4

Type a new number into the **T Duration** (Transition Duration) field (Figure 4.181).

Transition	Out Frame, Preceding Clip	Out	Frame, Preceding	Clip
Trn Out	00:00:04:07 Revert	Out	00: 00: 06: 05	Revert
T Duration	00:00:01:28			



Figure 4.181: The T Duration Field

The duration of the transition is shown in the **T Duration Field**.

To change the duration, type the timecode into the field, or use the + or - buttons next to it. The in point of the transition and selected clip are not affected, but the duration of the preceding clip and the transition change.

#### Lock Trans Button

When you enter Transition Edit mode, the **Lock Trans** button on the **Editor Options** panel is turned on by default (Figure 4.182).

Lock Trans	Editor Options		x
Button	Drag Clips	Move	Roll
	Edits Lock Trans	Trim Clip	Slide Edit
	Auto Beats	Follow Rec	Tape Scrub
	Audio Scrub Length	2 Arc	ound pos bar
	Load Files To	Source	Single Click

Figure 4.182: The Lock Trans Button

As long as this option is selected, you can use the mouse to change the in and out points of a transition between two clips and the clips automatically follow the changes. In other words, the effect always covers exactly the overlapped area of the clips.

**NOTE:** This works only for transitions that do not have fixed lengths. If the transition on the timeline does not have trimming handles, it cannot be resized.

Editor Manual



TransportThe transport controls for the selected clip (Figure 4.183) are similar to those for<br/>the preceding clip.

Transition In Frame, Selected Clip	In Frame, Selected Clip
Trn In 00:00:04:07 Revert	In 00:00:06:05

Figure 4.183: The Transport Controls for the Selected Clip

The third monitor from the left displays the **Transition In Frame** for the selected clip. This is the first frame where the selected clip begins to transition in.

The fourth monitor, on the far right, displays the **In Frame** for the selected clip. This is the frame where the transition ends and

Use these controls to change the in point on the timeline for the selected clip. The in point and duration of the effect change accordingly.

**Fixed Duration Effects** Next you will add another transition to the timeline, this time between the second and third clips. But you will use a different type of effect.

- 1. From the home bin (GlobeCaster\Bins), navigate to the Fx\Sampler bin.
- 2. Find the picon for the \_050\_RotateTL.tfx effect (Figure 4.184).



Figure 4.184: Finding an Effect Picon

3. Drag the picon from the bin and drop it at the in point of the third clip on the timeline. Remember that a yellow position indicator appears when the clip is lined up exactly.

**TIP:** When you move your mouse over a picon, its name appears in a pop-up box.



You now have a new transition between the second and third clips (Figure 4.185).

	01:00:00:01	01:00:14:23
	Live_07.05.2001_11.10.33	Live_07.05.2001_11.31.43
+	Live_07.05.2001	11.11.02
FX	1>2	251
		J
		1
		I I
· · · · ·	l	

Figure 4.185: Adding the New Effect to the Timeline

4. Click the third clip to select it.

Notice that the effect has no trimming handles, unlike the previous dissolve. This means that this effect has a fixed duration.

If you try to use the transport controls, you cannot adjust the effect, only the in and out points of the clips. You also see a message in the GlobeCaster Editor's **Message Field** (Figure 4.186).

Source				Per	form
N/A	Stopped	Eject	All Stop	Asse	mble
The effect	associated with t	his transiti	on is not resiz	able.	OK

Figure 4.186: Fixed Length Effect Message

If the duration of the fixed-length effect does not work for the transition between your clips, you have two choices:

- If you are flexible about the duration of the transition between the clips, you can change the in and out points of the clips to match the fixed-length effect you selected.
- If you don't have a lot of flexibility on the duration, you can replace the fixedlength effect with one with a more suitable duration, or with a variable-length effect.

**Wrapping Up** In this tutorial, you learned how and when to use each of the GlobeCaster Editor's five advanced editing modes: Trim Clip, Trim Edit, Slip Source, Slide, and Transition Edit. You also learned what the monitors show you in these modes. And, you practiced adjusting clips by using the transport controls, by dragging clips with the mouse, and by typing in timecode numbers.

TIP: You can quickly replace a fixed-length effect with a dissolve. To do this, right-click on the effect, and choose **Replace with Dissolve** from the pop-up menu.



### Sync Roll Editing

In this tutorial, you will learn how to perform a sync roll edit using the functions of the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel in the GlobeCaster Switcher and then digitize the clips of this sync roll in the GlobeCaster Editor.

Sync roll editing is a technique typically used when two or more cameras were set up at a live event, such as a wedding, and the feed from each camera was recorded to a different tape. The tapes are then brought back to the studio, synchronized to the same point in time, and played back simultaneously while the editor switches the tapes as if they were on location switching cameras live.

Sync roll editing works in conjunction with the timeline building function of the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel. With this panel, you can create a timeline as you switch these tapes. That way, you can bring your timeline into the GlobeCaster Editor and make adjustments or corrections.

By following this tutorial, you will get a feel for how to use the functions of the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel to sync roll edit and build a timeline that can be edited in the GlobeCaster Editor.

This tutorial is broken up into six steps. These steps are:

- 1. Setting up the VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize panel
- 2. Marking the starting points for your video sources
- 3. Sync roll editing and building a timeline
- 4. Setting picons for your timeline clips
- 5. Importing the timeline into the GlobeCaster Editor
- 6. Digitizing the timeline clips

Setting Up The VTR Transport/ Sync Roll/Live Digitize Panel Before you can begin sync roll editing, you need to first set whether your RS-422 decks are play or record decks in the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel. By doing this, you will get a feel for one of this panel's functions, which is controlling decks from the GlobeCaster Switcher. Only RS-422 compatible decks can be controlled from this panel.

To set up the VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize panel, follow these steps:

1. From the GlobeCaster Editor, toggle to the GlobeCaster Switcher by pushing the **Scroll Lock** button on your keyboard.

You can use the **Scroll Lock** button to toggle between the GlobeCaster Editor and the GlobeCaster Switcher programs without losing your work in either application.



The GlobeCaster Switcher program can also be opened by clicking the GlobeCaster Switcher button (Figure 4.187) in the toolbar.



Figure 4.187: The Switcher Button

You see the GlobeCaster Switcher program on your screen.

2. Click on the **Panels** button (Figure 4.188).



Figure 4.188: The Panels Button

A pop-up menu appears.

3. Choose **VTR Transport** from the pop-up menu (Figure 4.189).



Figure 4.189: Choosing VTR Transport from the Pop-Up Menu

You see the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel (Figure 4.190) in the upper right corner of your screen. With this panel, you can control VTRs directly from the GlobeCaster Switcher interface. This panel also gives you the flexibility to digitize live clips or build timelines that can be played back from the GlobeCaster Switcher or edited in the GlobeCaster Editor. In this

Editor Manual



tutorial, you will use the Build Timeline function to create a timeline that can be edited in the GlobeCaster Editor.

VTF	R Transport / Sync Roll / Live Digiti			x
	Ports 1 to 4			
	V4 : Panasonic AG-DS550	9	Off	Off
	Empty	9	Off	Off
	Empty	9	Off	Off
	Empty	9	Off	Off
тмі	TimeMachine 1 9 Progr	am Ou	t Ch 1/2	Ch 1/2
	Mark	1	Lock	
	Cue	TMLen		: [
			V A1 A2	
	Mark All Start All Sync Rol	St	op All P	ause
	Cue All Build Timeline	2	Record S	afety
	New TL Save	2	New Clip Save	

Figure 4.190: The VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize Panel

4. In the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel, set the source type for each deck to **Play** by clicking the **Source Type** button next to the source (Figure 4.191). In the example, Source 1 is used.



Figure 4.191: The Source Type Button for Source 1

A pop-up menu appears.



- Ports 1 to 4 V4 : Panasonic AG-DS550 Off Play Menu Empty Option Off Empt 9 TimeMachine 1 Ch 1/2 Ch 1/2 Program Out -Lock
- 5. Choose **Play** from the pop-up menu (Figure 4.192).

Figure 4.192: Choosing Play from the Pop-Up Menu

By doing this, you have set up the Source 1 deck as a play deck. Choosing **Record** from the pop-up menu makes the deck a record deck, which records your edits to tape as you sync roll edit. Since in this tutorial you will build a timeline and bring it into the GlobeCaster Editor, you do not need to set a record deck. Choosing **Off** from the pop-up menu turns off record and play functions for the deck.

6. Since you want all of your source decks to be play decks for this tutorial, repeat step 5 for each source deck.



Figure 4.193: Choosing Record from the Pop-Up Menu

**TIP:** If you want to crash record your project as you sync roll edit it and build a timeline, you can do this by setting a deck as a record deck. Do this by clicking the **Source Type** button for the desired deck and choosing **Record** from the pop-up menu (Figure 4.193).



7. In the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel, select audio tracks in the mixer for your Source 1 deck by clicking the **Mixer** button (Figure 4.194) next to the source.



Figure 4.194: The Mixer Button for Source 1

A pop-up menu appears.

8. Choose a mixer channel from the pop-up menu (Figure 4.195). This tutorial illustrates **3/4** being selected, but you could choose any pair of mixer channels.

	Ports 1 to 4		
1	V4 : Panasonic AG-DS550	9	√ Off
2	Empty	9	Channel 3/4
3	Empty	9	Channel 5/6
	Empty	19	Channel 7/8

Figure 4.195: Choosing a Mixer Channel from the Pop-Up Menu

By setting the mixer channels to **3/4** for your first source deck, you can control the audio coming from the source deck with the level sliders labeled **3** and **4** in the **Audio Mixer** panel (Figure 4.196). Choosing **5/6** from the pop-up menu sets the audio to correspond to the level sliders labeled **5** and **6** in the **Audio** 

**284** )))) Chapter 4

**Mixer** panel. For more information on using this panel, see the GlobeCaster *Switcher Manual*.



Figure 4.196: The Audio Mixer Panel

9. Select a mixer channel for each source deck by repeating steps 7 and 8 for each deck.

Leave the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel open for now, you will use it again later in this tutorial.


NOTE: If Time Machine is installed in your GlobeCaster, you can digitize the program out as you switch your video. Do this by clicking on the TimeMachine button (Figure 4.197), then clicking the Source Type button and choosing **Program Out** from the pop-up menu (next figure). Because in this tutorial you will digitize the clips after you bring your timeline into the GlobeCaster Editor, you do not need to digitize the program out video.



Figure 4.197: The Time Machine Button



Figure 4.198: Choosing Program Out from the Pop-Up Menu

Now that you've set up the decks for your project, it's time to mark in points for your sources.

286 Chapter 4

Marking Starting Points For Video Sources In this section of the tutorial, you will mark the starting point for each video source. The starting point will be where you want the tape to start playing when you click the **Sync Roll** button in the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel. Clicking this button cues up all decks and starts them playing, so you want to make sure to set in points for each tape.

Follow these steps to mark the starting points for your video sources:

1. Select a source deck by clicking on the **Source** button for the desired deck (Figure 4.199).

		Ports 1 to 4			
Selected	1	V4 : Panasonic AG-DS550	9	Play	Off
Source	2	Empty	9	Off	Off
Dutton	3	Empty	9	Off	Off
	4	Empty		Off	Off
	тмі 🚺	TimeMachine 1	jram Ou	t Ch 1/2	2 Ch 1/2

Figure 4.199: The Selected Source Button

2. With the transport controls in the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel (Figure 4.200), shuttle to where you want the tape to begin when you start sync roll editing. This is where you mark the start point.

		i 📥 💽
Mark	00:00:00:00	Lock
Cue	00:00:00:00 TMLen	:-:-:-

Figure 4.200: The Transport Controls

3. When you get to where you want your tape to start, click the **Mark** button (Figure 4.201).



Figure 4.201: The Mark Button

By doing this, you have marked an in point on your tape.

NOTE: When performing a sync roll, you want the in points on the video tapes marked at a reference point that denotes an instant in time. For example, many wedding videographers use multiple cameras to record the wedding from various angles. To synchronize the tapes from these cameras, a white flash is often used at the beginning. Once the in points for all of the tapes is set to the flash, they are synchronized in time.



Now, when you click the **Cue** button (Figure 4.202) with that source deck selected, the tape is cued to this point.



Figure 4.202: The Cue Button

- 4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 for each source deck until you have marked in points for each tape.
- 5. In the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel, cue up all of your decks by clicking the **Cue All** button (Figure 4.203).



Figure 4.203: The Cue All Button

Once you click the button, all of your tapes are cued to where you marked in points.

Leave the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel open for now, as you will use it later in this tutorial.



Figure 4.204: The Cue Button

You are now ready to move to the next section of the tutorial.

**TIP:** Individual tapes can be cued by selecting the **Source** button for the desired deck, then clicking the **Cue button** (Figure 4.204).

288 Chapter 4 Sync Roll

Editing And Building A Timeline Now that you have set in points for your tapes and have cued them up, you're ready to begin sync roll editing. In this section of the tutorial, you will edit your video by switching your video sources as you would switch a live show. Using the functions of the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel, you will set it up so that a timeline is built as you switch your video. Later in this tutorial, you will bring this timeline into the GlobeCaster Editor and digitize the clips from the timeline.

To sync roll edit and build a timeline, follow these steps:

1. In the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel, turn on the automatic timeline building function by selecting the **Build Timeline** button (Figure 4.205).



Figure 4.205: The Build Timeline Button

By doing this, you are telling GlobeCaster to automatically build a timeline as you are switching your video sources. This is necessary if you wish to fine tune the projects or digitize the individual clips in the GlobeCaster Editor.

2. In the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel, start a new timeline by clicking the **New TL** button (Figure 4.206).



Figure 4.206: The New TL Button

3. If there is an unsaved timeline loaded into the GlobeCaster Editor, you see a window that says, **"Current GlobeCaster Editor project is not saved. Save** 

**NOTE:** If you have a timeline loaded into the GlobeCaster Editor, and you do not start a new timeline, the timeline you create as you sync roll is automatically added to the end of the loaded timeline.



**changes now?"** (Figure 4.207). If you want to save the project, click **Yes**. If you do not want to save the project, click **No**.



Figure 4.207: The Save Project Window

4. In the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel, take note of the **Rec Safety** button (Figure 4.208). Select this button if you have assigned a deck as a record deck and are crash recording as you sync roll edit.

The **Rec Safety** button offers a safety net for when you have assigned a deck as a record deck and are crash recording. With **Rec Safety** selected, when you click the **Sync Roll, Start All,** or **Record** buttons, a menu pops up asking if you really want to crash record.



Figure 4.208: The Rec Safety Button

The next step is to begin your sync roll editing. Before you do this, you may want to set up the GlobeCaster Switcher so that you can begin switching your video once you tell the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel to begin your sync roll. For example, you may want to load some transition effects and set your program out source before you begin your sync roll.

1. In the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel, begin your sync roll. There are two ways to do this:



a. Click the **Sync Roll** button (Figure 4.209) to begin your sync roll.



Figure 4.209: The Sync Roll Button

When you click this button, the GlobeCaster Switcher first cues up your tapes to the in points you marked earlier and starts the record deck recording (if you assigned a record deck). If you have a Time Machine installed and selected the **TimeMachine** button, Time Machine begins digitizing a clip as you switch your video.

b. Click the **Start All** button (Figure 4.210)



Figure 4.210: The Start All Button

Clicking this button starts all the tapes playing and recording from wherever their current point is (if you assigned a record deck). If you have a Time Machine installed and selected the **TimeMachine** button, Time Machine begins digitizing a clip as you switch your video.

An example of when you would use the **Start All** button is if you specifically need to start all your decks without cueing them up first.

2. Now that you've clicked the **Sync Roll** or **Start All** button, you can begin switching your project. For more information on switching video, see the *GlobeCaster Switcher Manual*.

As you switch your video, GlobeCaster assembles your timeline in the GlobeCaster Editor. When you finish your sync roll, you can go into the GlobeCaster Editor to work with this timeline.



3. When you have finished switching your project, click the **Stop All** button (Figure 4.211) in the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel to stop all of your decks. Clicking this button also stops the build timeline function.



Figure 4.211: The Stop All Button

Once you have stopped all of your decks, your timeline is complete and you can save it to a bin or toggle to the GlobeCaster Editor to edit the event on the timeline.

 Save the timeline to a bin by dragging-and-dropping the Timeline picon (Figure 4.212) from the VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize panel to a bin.



Figure 4.212: The Timeline Picon

5. Close the **VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize** panel by clicking the **X** button in the upper right corner of the panel.

You're now ready to move on to the next section.

**TIP:** A Timeline picon that is saved to a bin can be loaded and played back in the GlobeCaster Switcher by double-clicking it. This loads the timeline into the FX window. This timeline is played by clicking the Auto button or by pushing the Space Bar on your keyboard. This timeline can also be loaded into the GlobeCaster Editor as you would any timeline.

292 Chapter 4

Bringing The Timeline Into the GlobeCaster Editor Now that you've finished your sync roll, you can bring the timeline you created into the GlobeCaster Editor for further editing or for digitizing your clips (if you have a Time Machine installed). After building a timeline in the GlobeCaster Switcher, there are two ways to bring a timeline into the GlobeCaster Editor. They are:

- 1. If you saved the timeline picon into a bin, then worked on other projects, and then came back to the GlobeCaster Switcher, do this:
  - a. Bring up the GlobeCaster Editor by clicking the Editor button (Figure 4.213), or by pressing the **Scroll Lock** button on your keyboard.



Figure 4.213: The Editor Button

You see the GlobeCaster Editor program on your screen.

b. Locate the timeline picon (Figure 4.214) in the bin where you saved it.



Figure 4.214: The Timeline Picon

c. Load this timeline into the GlobeCaster Editor by double-clicking it.



You see the timeline opened up in the GlobeCaster Editor (Figure 4.215). Your timeline will look different than the following figure, since you switched your own video.

+-Video 1	
FX	
]	

Figure 4.215: The Timeline in the GlobeCaster Editor

2. If you've just finished your sync roll and want to go directly to the GlobeCaster Editor to edit the timeline, press the **Scroll Lock** button on your keyboard. This is the hot key to toggle from the GlobeCaster Switcher to the GlobeCaster Editor programs.

You see the timeline open in the GlobeCaster Editor (Figure 4.216). Your timeline will look different than Figure 4.216, since you switched your own video.

	01:00:00:00	01:00:03:12 X
+ - Video 1		
∫+Video 2		
FX		
	J	

Figure 4.216: The Timeline in the GlobeCaster Editor

You are now ready to move on to the next step.

Chapter 4

Setting Picons For Timeline Clips Before you begin editing or digitizing anything on your timeline, it is a good idea to first set picons for all of your timeline clips. When a timeline that was built in the GlobeCaster Switcher is brought into the GlobeCaster Editor, all of the clips have a generic GlobalStreams picon on them. Setting picons for the clips puts a still from the clip on the clip's picon. This makes it easier to determine what is on each clip.

To set picons for your timeline clips, follow these steps:

1. In the toolbar, right-click on the Timeline picon (Figure 4.217).



Figure 4.217: The Timeline Picon

A pop-up menu appears.

2. Choose Make all Picons from the pop-up menu (Figure 4.218).



Figure 4.218: Choosing Make All Picons from the Pop-Up Menu

Once you choose this option, the GlobeCaster Editor shuttles through the tapes and sets a picon for each clip in the timeline. On the timeline, you see a status bar moving up and down in each clip's picon. This indicates that the GlobeCaster Editor is setting picons for each clip.

With picons set for your clips, you are ready to digitize the clips.

**Digitizing The Timeline Clips** Now that you have a timeline of your sync roll in the GlobeCaster Editor, you can edit the timeline as you would any project. You can also digitize your clips to Time Machine if you have one installed in your GlobeCaster. You do this by selecting the clips you want to digitize on the timeline, or by digitizing the clips in a batch using the **Batch Digitize** window. In this section of the tutorial, you will learn several

ways to digitize clips.



**NOTE:** When Time Machine digitizes clips, an extra second is digitized at the beginning and end of the digitized clip. This gives you extra video to fine-tune your edits. To digitize all of the clips on the timeline, follow these steps:

### Digitizing all Clips Using the Pop-Up Menu

1. In the timeline, select the first clip you wish to digitize by clicking on it.

You see the event highlighted, indicating that it is selected (Figure 4.219).



Figure 4.219: The Selected Clip

2. Digitize the selected clip by right-clicking on it and choosing **Digitize to Time Machine** from the pop-up menu (Figure 4.220).



Figure 4.220: Choosing Digitize to Time Machine from the Pop-Up Menu

Once you choose this option, the GlobeCaster Editor cues up your decks and then begins digitizing the clip. You see a white status bar moving up and down in the clip's picon, indicating that the clip is being digitized.

3. Repeat steps **1** and **2** for each clip in your timeline until all of your clips have been digitized to Time Machine.

### Digitizing Selected Clips with the Digitize Button in the Toolbar

1. In the timeline, select the first clip you wish to digitize by clicking on it.

**296** )))) Chapter 4

You see the event highlighted, indicating that it is selected (Figure 4.221).



Figure 4.221: The Selected Clip

2. In the Clip Controls, click the **Digitize** button (Figure 4.222) to digitize the selected clip.



Figure 4.222: The Digitize Button

Once you choose this option, the GlobeCaster Editor cues up your decks and then begins digitizing the clip. You see a white status bar moving up and down in the clip's picon, indicating that the clip is being digitized.

3. Repeat step 2 for each clip in your timeline until all of your clips have been digitized to Time Machine.



### Digitizing Clips Using the Batch Digitize Window

1. Select all of the clips in your timeline by right-clicking on an event in the timeline and choosing **Select All** from the pop-up menu (Figure 4.223).



Figure 4.223: Choosing Select All from the Pop-Up Menu

In the timeline, you see that all of the events are selected.



2. Add all of the events to the Batch Digitize list by right-clicking on an event in the timeline and choosing **Add to Batch Digitize** from the pop-up menu (Figure 4.224).



Figure 4.224: Choosing Add to Batch Digitize from the Pop-Up Menu

3. On the toolbar, bring up the **Batch Digitize** window by clicking the **Batch** button (Figure 4.225) on the toolbar.



Figure 4.225: The Batch Button

You see the **Batch Digitize** window (Figure 4.226) in the bottom half of your screen. From this window, you can set the properties for each clip, and digitize selected clips in a batch. For more information on using the **Batch Digitize** 



window, see "Using The Batch Digitize Window" on page 142 and the tutorial on non-linear editing in this chapter.

Glob C Total 1 Approx Sp Sp	eCaste Clips Selecte Inne Selecte Ince Require Ince Availabi	er Batch Dig d 0 d 00:00:00:00:00 d 0 e 6590464	Active Deck State	Select Deselect Remove S	All St t All St elected Manage	art Cop e Tapes Save U	Clip %:	[ OK	Store digitized In Bin In Timeline Save Now	Editor
Folder Nar	me									Parent A X
Icon	Select	State	Name	Tape	Volume	Start	Length	End Components	Compression	User

Figure 4.226: The Batch Digitize Window

Once you've digitized all of your clips, you can edit your timeline as you would any project. This timeline can also be dropped into the FX picon in the GlobeCaster Switcher and played back. By completing this tutorial, you now have the skills to perform a sync roll edit and digitize timeline clips in the GlobeCaster Editor.

For more tutorials using the GlobeCaster Editor, see the *GlobeCasters Tutorials Manual*.

**NOTE:** If you are logging clips, there is a fourth way to digitize them. You can turn on the Auto-Batch button under the right monitor, and the clips are automatically sent to the Batch Digitize list as you mark them. When using the **Auto-**Batch button, be sure to click on the **New Clip** button under the right monitor to clear the Clip picon between each clip. In this tutorial, you have already marked your clips using the **VTR** Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize panel, so you won't use AutoBatch. For more information on the AutoBatch feature, see the tutorial on non-linear editing

on non-linear edit in this chapter, or "AutoBatch" on page 61.









## Appendix I Keyboard Commands

Keyboard commands are a quick way to navigate through applications. In this appendix, you find keyboard commands for the GlobeCaster Editor:

### Clip Controls Accelerators

Ctrl+L	Lift.
Ctrl+E	Extract.
Ctrl+S	Split.
Shift+M	Merge.
Shift+Ctrl+D	Digitize.
Ctrl+Z	Undo.
Ctrl+Y or Shift+Control+Z	Redo.
Ctrl+B	Batch.

Timeline Controls Accelerators

1	Enter trim clip mode.
2	Enter trim edit mode.
3	Enter slip source mode.
4	Enter slide clip mode.
5	Enter transition mode.
6	Enter add clip mode.
7	Enter view mode.
Shift+2	Two monitor mode (actually @ sign).
Shift+3	Three monitor mode (actually # sign).
Shift+4	Four monitor mode (actually \$ sign).
Ctrl+R	Toggle Ripple mode.

Keyboard Commands

304 )))) Appendix I

Main Controls Accelerators

Α	Select timeline/record deck.
S	Select source A.
D	Select source B (must be in 3 or 4 panel mode).
F	Select source C (must be in 4 panel mode).
0	Opens Source Pop-up Menu for currently active source.
Space Bar	All stop.
Ε	Preview.
W	Review.
Q	Perform.

### Monitor Controls Accelerators

Μ	Mark in.
, (comma)	Mark out.
J	Splice.
K	Overwrite.
L	Replace.
. (period)	New clip.
G	Cue in.
Н	Cue out.
Numpad +	Increase duration on active source.
Numpad -	Decrease duration on active source.
Ν	Go to current timecode on current deck.
Insert	Enter duration timecode on active source.
Home	Enter in point timecode on active source.
End	Enter out point timecode on active source.



### Edit Guide Accelerators

Ctrl+M	Toggle edit guide.
Alt+M	Go to next edit guide.
Shift+Alt+M	Go to previous edit guide.
Ctrl+Alt+M	Go to next created edit guide.
Shift+Ctrl+Alt+M	Go to previous created edit guide.
Shift+Ctrl+M	Select edit guide.

### VTR Accelerators

С	Play current deck.
Shift+C or Alt+C	Play 2x.
V	Pause/stop current deck.
Shift+V or Alt+V	Stop.
Z	Rewind current deck.
Alt+Z	Reverse play.
X	Fast-forward current deck.
Alt+Q	Rewind 4x.
Shift+Alt+Q or Shift+Z	Rewind 8x.
Alt+W	Rewind 1/4x.
В	Slow current deck.
Alt+E	Fast-forward 1/4x.
Alt+R	Fast-forward 4x.
Shift+Alt+R or Shift+X	Fast-forward 8x.
Alt+A	Rewind 5 frames.
Alt+S	Rewind 1 frame.
Alt+D	Forward 1 frame.
Alt+F	Forward 5 frame.

Keyboard Commands

306 Appendix I Panel

Accelerators

0 Open Editor Options Panel Ctrl+O Toggle Editor Options Panel Р Open Clip Properties Panel Ctrl+P Toggle Clip Main Properties Panel Ctrl+Alt+P Toggle Clip Audio Properties Panel Ctrl+T Toggle Tape Main Properties Panel Ctrl+Alt+T Toggle Tape Audio Properties Panel Ctrl+V Toggle Vector Scope Panel

Application Accelerators

Scroll Lock	Toggle Switcher/Editor applications.
Ctrl+Alt+A	Launch Animator/Compositor (quit).
Shift+Ctrl+Alt+A	Launch Animator/Compositor (minimize).
Ctrl+Alt+C	Launch Character Generator (quit).
Shift+Ctrl+Alt+C	Launch Character Generator (minimize).
Ctrl+Alt+E	Launch Effects Generator (quit).
Shift+Ctrl+Alt+E	Launch Effects Generator (minimize).

### Miscellaneous Accelerators

Ctrl+U	Unload timeline.
Alt+B	Toggle Load Timeline from Pos Bar
Т	Toggle Load Timeline on Scrub
[ (left bracket)	Set Audio Scrub Option to "Play up to pos bar"
\(backslash)	Set Audio Scrub Option to "Play centered around pos bar"
] (right bracket)	Set Audio Scrub Option to "Play from pos bar"



Shift+P	Convert timeline to PAL
Tab	Next source event
Shift+Tab	Previous source event
left arrow	Move position bar in timeline 1 frame left.
right arrow	Move position bar in timeline 1 frame right.
Ctrl+left arrow	Move position bar in timeline 10 frames left.
Ctrl+right arrow	Move position bar in timeline 10 frames right.
Ctrl+up arrow	Zoom in timeline x2
Ctrl+Alt+up arrow	Zoom in timeline +10%
Ctrl+down arrow	Zoom out timeline x1/2
Ctrl+Alt+down arrow	Zoom out timeline -10%
Ctrl+?	Launch Help window

Keyboard Commands





## Appendix II Troubleshooting Guide

This section is a troubleshooting guide to problems and possible solutions for the GlobeCaster Editor.

### I don't see video on the monitor in the GlobeCaster Editor interface.

In serial devices, check that the correct input numbers are dedicated to the correct decks or other video equipment.

### The GlobeCaster Editor won't import my EDL.

- The file doesn't end in .edl. Solution: rename it so the extension is .edl.
- Or the EDL isn't in CMX 3400 or 3600 format. Solution: save the EDL in that format in whichever tool you are saving the EDL.

### The GlobeCaster Editor EDLs don't look the same when loaded back in.

This is because the GlobeCaster Editor can't save all the transitions, downstream keys, color corrections, audio settings, etc. in a text EDL. It may also have to alter the data slightly so that the timeline can be understood by a CMX editor. If you want all your settings saved, don't save your timeline as an EDL until you want to take it to another system.

## "Whip" Edits. There is a jump in the image for the first frame or two at the in point of the edit on the record tape.

This is called a "whip" edit. We know of two potential causes and their corresponding solutions.

- Old media. If the tape is highly used, or if an edit has been done at that point several times, the area of the tape could get tired. Solution: Try newer media.
- The heads on the deck have seen a lot of action. The heads may not switch cleanly from playing to insert editing. Solution: get the deck(s) serviced.

# 310 )))) Appendix II

### When I am editing in the GlobeCaster Editor, the system aborts the edit.

Several possible problems can cause aborted edits. Two things to look at right off the bat are:

- If you have a Panasonic DVC Pro 640, 650, or 750, check the **CF** or **CAPLOCK** menu setting. If there is a choice between 2F and 4F, set it to 2F. Setting it to 4F can cause some edits to be off by one frame EVERY time.
- Is the timecode continuous during the preroll of the edit on all the tapes involved? If not, this can cause the editor to believe the edit will be wrong and therefore abort the edit. Try running decks using Timer1 timecode, which you can set in **serial device properties** (see the chapter on "Serial Devices" in the User's Guide for more information on setting serial device properties).

If neither of these things is causing the problem, try the following:

- In Edit Options turn OFF Abort Inaccurate Edits.
- For all playback decks involved in the edit, go to **Deck Properties Panel** and turn ON **Disable Bumps**. Also set **Play Delay** to zero (0).
- Use the superimpose video out of all playback decks, so you can see a timecode window on the screen for each deck you look at.
- Run simple cuts-only edits from each playback deck.
- Cue to the in point of the edit on the record deck (after it's been performed) and look at the timecode in the superimpose text. Compare this time to the actual IN point for the source deck.

There can be multiple problems observed, and they should be fixed in this order:

If in the previous step you didn't see anything from the source clip you marked, then it may mean that the edit deck didn't start recording at the right time. Although this wouldn't cause an edit to abort, it will make it more difficult to diagnose and fix that problem.

Solution: Count out how many frames pass on the record deck before you see a frame from the source clip (including the one at the record in point). Multiply this number by 2 (to get fields) and call that the "edit delay adjustment." (Note: if the edit actually started recording BEFORE the in-point this would be a negative number, the number of frames of source that were recorded before the in point multiplied by -2).

Go to **Configure--Serial Devices** panel and select **Properties** for this edit deck. Add this "edit delay adjustment" to the number in the **Edit Delay** box and enter the result there. If the **Edit End Delay** was the same as the **Edit Delay** before you changed it, put the same result into **Edit End Delay** that you put into **Edit Delay**.

Remember to go into **Properties** for the source decks and turn off the **Disable Bumps** button which you turned on at the beginning of this solution. It should improve the accuracy of the edits with most tape decks.

• If the record tape correctly shows the source material starting at the record in frame, and ending on (but not including) the out frame, then do this:

GlobeCaster

Look at the recorded timecode overlay at the in point on the record deck, and subtract that timecode from the actual source in-point for the clip. Multiply this number by 2 to get fields and enter it in the **Play Delay** number box in the **Properties** window for the source deck that the clip came from. (Get **Serial Device Properties** from **Configure--Serial Devices** panel). You may have to do this fix for each playback deck. At this point, you should be able to run an edit and have it be frame-accurate at least some of the time. If you go into **Properties** for the source decks and turn off the **Disable Bumps** button, it should improve the accuracy of the edits with most tape decks. Troubleshooting Guide





## **FCC Notice**

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

FCC Notice









## Index

### Symbols

? Button, 178

## Numerics

2 (Monitors) Button, 90 3 (Monitors) Button, 90 4 (Monitors) Button, 90

## A

A/V Edit, Creating, 208 A/X Edit, Creating, 207 A1 & A2, Time Machine Recorder Panel, 64 Abort Edits If Off By More Than, 99 Aborting Edits Margin, 99 Retries, 99 Add Clip Button, 90 Add Dip, 106, 107 Add Fade In. 106 Add Fade Out, 107 Add Keyframe, 107 Add to Batch Digitize, 108, 141 Adding a Graphic Overlay, 24 Adding Clips To The Timeline, 200 Adding Effects And DSK's, 204 Adding Effects to Timeline, 21 Adjust (Matte) Color, 108 Adjusting Black Hue, 79 Black Magnitude, 79 *Hue*, 79 *Luma*, 79 Saturation, 79 Setup, 79 White Hue, 79 White Magnitude, 79 Advanced Editing Modes See Editing Modes Aligning Events, Using Snap, 115 All Stop Button, 53 Animate (Audio) Button, 165

Animate Level, 108 Animate Level Pop-Up Menu Add Dip, 106, 107 Add Fade In, 106 Add Fade Out, 107 Add Kevframe, 107 Create Cross-Fade, 109 overview, 160 Animating Audio Levels, 108, 155 Animator/Compositor Button, 178 Appending A Timeline, 87, 205 Assemble Button, 55 Assembling A Timeline, Options, 98 Assigning Record Decks, 186 Assigning Source Decks, 45 Assigning Sources, 65 Audio adding cross-fade, 109 adding dips, 106, 107 adding fade ins, 106 adding fade outs, 107 adding keyframes, 107 animating levels, 165 animating on timeline, 155 controls, 161 cubic keyframes, 159 editing keyframes, 158 equalizer panel, 165 hold keyframes, 159 keyframe, decibel level, 157 level controls, 163, 165 linear keyframes, 158 mixing, 161 muting, 165 muting monitor, 161 pan controls, 163, 165 send left controls, 163, 165 send right controls, 163, 165 setting frequency, 169 setting gain, 169 setting q, 169 setting tape properties, 161 stripping, 163, 164 stripping, from digitized clips, 225 trim controls, 163, 165

*VU meter*, 161 Audio Controls monitor slider, 161 Mute button, 161 *VU meter*, 161 Audio Edit Lock Buttons, 76 Audio Levels Tracks doubling height, 110 halving height, 111 resetting height, 114 stripping, 76 unlocking, 76 Audio Levels, Animating, 108 Audio Properties Button, 57 Audio Tracks Pop-Up Menu *Cubic*, 109 Edit Key, 110 *Hold*, 111 Linear, 112 Auto Assemble Button, 98 Auto Beats, 96 Auto3Pnt, 61, 195 AutoBatch, 61, 218 Automatically Saving Clips, 63 AutoSave Button, 63, 196 AutoSplice Button, 61, 194 Aux(iliary) Button, 119 AVI Files, Digitizing, 141, 237

## В

Batch Button, 72 Batch Digitize Window Active Deck Status, 143 Approx Space Required, 143 Batch List picon, 144 Clip %, 144 Clips Selected, 143 Comments, 149 Components, 148, 225 Compression, 149 Deselect All, 143 digitizing clips, 226 Editor button, 146 *End*, 148 Icon, 147 In Bin button, 145 In Timeline button, 145 Length, 148

Index

# 318 ))))

Manage Tapes button, 144 message area, 145 Name, 148 opening, 72 overview, 142, 223 Project, 149 Remove Selected, 143 renaming clips, 223 Save (Batch) List button, 144 Save Now button, 145 saving batch list, 144 saving clip from batch list, 147 Select, 148 Select All, 143 selecting clips, 148 setting compression level, 224 Size (Of Clips), 149 Space Available, 143 Start, 144 Start timecode, 148 State, 148 Stop button, 144 Tape, 148 Tape List, 143, 225 To Do List bin, 146 Total %, 144 Total Time Selected, 143 User, 149 Volume, 148 Batch Digitizing, 108 selecting clips for, 214 sending clips to list, 141 Batch List adding clips to, 221 Picon, 144 saving, 144, 221 selecting clips, 214 selecting clips in, 148 setting picon, 221 Bins changing the number of, 36 Black Hue, 79 Black Mag, 79 Blue Slider Effect Border Color panel, 122 Matte Color panel, 122 Border (Wipes) Button, 120 Btm (Bottom) Bins Button, 36, 170

Buttons, 98 -/+ clip duration, 128 source duration, 68 Transition Edit mode, 134 ?, 178 , 178  $\overline{2}$  Monitors, 90 3 Monitors, 90 4 Monitors, 90 A1, A2, A3, A4, 52 Add Clip, 90 All Stop, 53 Animate (Audio), 165 Animator/Compositor, 178 Assemble, 55 Audio Properties, 57 auto assemble, 98 Auto Beat, 96 Auto3Pnt, 61 AutoBatch, 61 AutoSave, 63 AutoSplice, 61 Aux(iliary), 119 Batch, 72 Border (for wipes), 120 Btm (Bottom) Bins, 170 BVB, 97 Character Generator, 178 Checkerboard, 98 Clip Props, 70 Configure, 170 Copy to all clips from same tape, 77 Cubic, 159 Cue In, 62, 68 *Cue Out*, 62, 68 Default (Effect Border Color/ Matte Color panels), 122 Digitize, 72 Double Click, 97 Duration (effects), 119 Effect Generator, 178 Eject, 53 Extract, 71 Fast Forward, 53 First Frame, 53 Flip (Effect) Vertically, 119 Follow Rec(order), 95 Freeze, 77 High (Equalizer), 169 Hold, 159

HSV/RGB, 122 In Bin, 145 In Timeline, 145 Jog Back 1 Frame, 53 Jog Back 10 Frames, 126 Jog Forward 1 Frame, 53 Jog Forward 10 Frames, 126 Last Frame, 53 Lift, 71 Limit Chroma, 80 Limit High Luma, 80 Limit Low Luma, 80 Linear, 158 Lock Trans, 95 Loop Clip (Trim Clip Editing *Mode*), 127 Loop Edit, 129 Loop while paused (effects), 119 Low (Equalizer), 169 main controls, 43 Manage Tapes, 144 Mark, 98 Mark In, 67 Mark In, Mark Out, 60 Mark Out, 67 master record safes, 52 Merge, 72 Mid (Equalizer), 169 *Move*, 94 Mute, 161, 165 New (Timeline), 90 New Clip, 62 OK, 54 Only Disk, 72 Options, 170 Overwrite, 61 panel (Clip Main Properties Panel), 75 Pause, 53 Perform, 54 *Pick*, 122 Plav, 53 Preview, 54 Preview Mode, 97 Recordable, 57 Recorder, 44 *Redo*, 72 Remove Unused Tapes, 98 Replace, 62 Reset (Color Correction Panel), 78

Reset timeline for assembly, 98 Reverse Play, 53 Reversed (effects), 119 Revert Color Correction panel, 78 Effect Border Color Panel, 122 Matte Color Panel, 122 Slide editing mode, 132 Slip Source editing mode, 131 Transition Edit mode, 133 Trim Clip Editing Mode, 127 Trim Edit mode, 129 Review, 54 Rewind, 53 *RGB/HSV*, 122 Ripple, 90 Roll, 94 Run, 76 Save (Batch) List, 144 Save (clip), 71 Save (Timeline), 89 Save Now (Batch Digitize), 145 *Scope*, 170 Set as Tape Default, 77 Setup, 77 Single Click, 97 Slide, 89 Slide Edit, 95 Slip Src (Source), 89 Source, 45 Source Type, 65 Splice, 60 Split, 71 Start (Batch Digitize), 144 *Stop*, 53 Stop (Batch Digitize), 144 Strobe, 77 Tape Name, 47 Tape Scrub, 95 *Timeline*, 44, 88 Top Bins, 170 Track #, 52 Trans(ition) Edit, 90

Trim Clip, 89

Panel), 95

Trim Clip (Editor Options

Trim Edit, 89 Undo, 72 Use Freeze, 72 Use Source, 163, 164 Use Tape Default, 77 VBV, 97 Video, 52 View, 90 *VVV*, 97 X, 178 **BVB Button**, 97

С

CD Audio, digitizing, 150 Changing Playback Speed, 238 Changing Source Duration, 68 Changing the Duration of Events, 14 Character Generator Button, 178 Checkerboard Button, 98 Chroma Values, Limiting, 80 Clearing Clip Settings, 62 Clearing The Timeline, 90 Clip %, 144 Clip Audio Properties Panel animating levels, 165 level controls, 165 Mute button, 165 overview, 164 pan controls, 165 send left controls, 165 send right controls, 165 trim controls, 165 Use Source buttons, 164 Clip Controls, 70 Batch button, 72 Clip Props button, 70 current clip picon, 71 Digitize button, 72 Extract button, 71 Lift button, 71 Merge button, 72 Only Disk button, 72 Redo button, 72 Save button, 71 Split button, 71 Undo button, 72 Use Freeze button, 72 **Clip Main Properties Panel** Audio Edit Lock buttons, 76 compression ratio, 76

GlobeCaster

Copy to all clips from same tape button, 77 Freeze button, 77 Loop Count, 76 overview, 75 panel button, 75 Play Speed, 76 record buttons, 76 reel name, 75 Run button, 76 Set as Tape Default button, 77 setting strobe rate, 76 Setup button, 77 Strobe button, 77 Use Tape Default button, 77 Clip Picon, Clearing Settings, 62 Clip Priority, 84 Clip Props Button, 70 ClipMems creating, 74 recording to PC hard drive, 114 using to make A/V edit, 112 Clips adding to timeline, linear, 200 audio equalizer panel, 165 automatically saving, 196 automatically splicing, 194 batch digitizing, 226 clearing settings, 62 Clip Main Properties panel, 75 color correction, 77 Color Correction Panel, 77 deleting, 73 deleting digitized, 140 digitized, where saved, 139 digitizing compression levels, 149 in Batch Digitize window, 142 naming projects, 149 on timeline, 110, 140 overview, 138, 212 selecting components, 148 size of, 149 using autobatch, 218 digitizing AVI and WAV files, 141 extracting, 71

Index

# 320 )))

freezing, 77 inverting selection on timeline, 111 inverting selection on track, 111 lifting, 71 logging, 192 logging from a digitized clip, 236 *looping*, 130, 241 looping (Trim Clip Editing Mode), 127 merging, 72 renaming, 73 saving, 71 saving from batch list, 147 selecting all on timeline, 114 selecting from here on a track of timeline, 114 selecting from here on timeline, 114 selecting none on timeline, 115 selecting track of timeline, 115 sending to batch (digitize) list, 214 setting audio properties, 164 setting higher priority, 84, 111 setting picons, 73 setting properties, 198 splicing, 194 splitting, 71, 115 strobing, 77 trimming, 127 trimming in Trim Clip mode, 261 Closing Editor, 178 Collapse Tree, 109 Color effect border, 122 matte, 108, 122 Color Correction adjusting black hue, 79 adjusting black magnitude, 79 adjusting hue, 79 adjusting luma, 79 adjusting saturation, 79 adjusting setup, 79 adjusting white hue, 79

adjusting white magnitude, 79 default settings, 77 limiting chroma values, 80 limiting luma values, 80 saving settings, 79 setting for all clips from a tape, 77 setting tape defaults, 77 Color Correction Panel Black Hue, 79 Black Mag, 79 color picon, 79 Hue slider, 79 Limit Chroma button, 80 Limit High Luma button, 80 Limit Low Luma button, 80 Luma slider, 79 overview, 77 Reset button, 78 Revert button, 78 saturation slider, 79 saving settings, 79 selecting input, 78 Setup slider, 79 White Hue, 79 White Mag, 79 Color Picon Color Correction panel, 79 Effect Border Color Panel, 122 Matte Color Panel, 122 Colors, Picking, 122 Components (Batch Digitize), 148 Compression level, setting, 224 overview, 149 ratio, 76 Configure Button, 170 Controls audio, 161 *clip*, 70 left (source) monitor main, 43 right (output) Monitor, 59 timeline, 88 Copy To All Clips From Same Tape Button, 77 Correcting Color, 77 Create Cross-Fade, 109 Creating Cuts, 16

Creating Cuts With Dissolves, 85 Creating Dissolves, 18, 109, 201 Cubic Keyframes, 159 Cue In Button, 62 Cue Out Button, 62 Cueing Decks, 62 Cueing Source Decks, 68 Current Clip Picon, 71 Current Clip Picon Pop-Up Menu deleting clips, 73 overview, 72 properties, 73 recording to hard drive, 74 renaming clips, 73 setting picons, 73 Customizing the Interface, 34

## D

d, 111 Decibel Level, Of Keyframe, 157 Decks assigning, record, 186 assigning, source, 184 cueing, 62 postroll, 99 preroll, 99 Default Bins, 196 Default Editing Mode, Add Clip Button, 90 Default Settings, Color Correction, 77 Default Source Duration, 68 Delete Event, 109 Delete Selected Event, 110 Deleting clips, 73 clips from batch list, 150 digitized clips, 140 Deselect All, Batch Digitize Window, 143 Designating Record Tapes, 57 Digitize Button, 72 Digitize To Time Machine, 110 Digitized Clips changing loop count, 76 compression ratio, 76 Only Disk button, 72 opening Batch Digitize window, 72 selecting for batch digitizing,
GlobeCaster

108 Use Freeze button, 72 Digitizing CD Audio tracks, 150 Digitizing Clips, 110 automatically sending to Batch List, 61 AVI and WAV files, 141 batch digitize window, overview, 223 batch digitizing, 226 changing playback speed, 238 clip versus source timecode, 233 compression levels, 149 creating ClipMems, 74 deleting, 140 Digitize button, 72 in Batch Digitize window, 142 naming projects, 149 on the timeline, 140 overview, 138, 212 saving batch in bin, 145 saving batch list, 221 saving batch on timeline, 145 saving clip from batch list, 147 selecting clips in batch list, 148 selecting components, 148 sending to batch list, 214 setting batch list picon, 221 setting compression level, 224 size of clips, 149 using autobatch, 218 where they are saved, 139 Digitizing, AVI and WAV Files, 237 Dissolves creating, 109, 201 creating cuts with, 85 making A/V edit, 112 making A/X edit, 113 replacing with, 114 Double Click Button, 97 Double Track Height, 110 Dragging Clips, Options, 94 DSK, Adding To Timeline, 204 Duration (Effects) Button, 119 Duration of Source, Changing,

## Е

68

Edit Decision Lists, Saving, 92 Edit Key Panel Cubic button, 159 decibel slider, 159 Delete Event button, 158 event (decibel) value, 159 Hold button, 159 Linear button, 158 overview, 158 time slider and timecode, 160 **Editing Modes** Add Clip, 124 overview *Slide*, 132, 270 *Slip Source*, 131, 267 Transition Edit, 133, 272 Trim Clip, 127, 261 Trim Edit, 129, 264 tutorial, 256 using Tape Scrub, 124 Editing To Audio, With Auto Beats, 96 Editor Interface, 32 **Editor Options Panel** abort edits margin, 99 aborted edit retries, 99 Auto Beats button, 96 Auto Scrub Length, 96 Follow Rec(order) button, 95 Load Timeline from PosBar, 98 Load Timeline on Scrub, 98 Lock Trans button, 95 Mark button, 98 maximum safe preroll, 99 Move, Roll buttons, 94 overview, 93 postroll, 99 preview mode, 97 reaction frames, 99 Remove Unused Tapes button, 98 Reset timeline for assembly, 98 Single/Double Click button, 97 Slide Edit button, 95 Tape Scrub button, 95

timeline starts timecode, 98 Trim Clip button, 95 Unload TL, 98 Edits aborting, 99 adjusting with Trim Edit, 264 looping, 129, 266 number of retries, 99 trimming, 129 EDL's, Saving, 92 Effect Border Color Panel color picon, 122 Default button, 122 hue, saturation, value sliders, 122 *mini color picons*, 122 overview, 121 Pick button, 122 red, green, blue sliders, 122 Revert button, 122 RGB/HSV button, 122 Effect Generator Button, 178 Effect Picon, 118 Effect Properties Panel as Chroma Keyer, 123 Aux(iliary) button, 119 Border, 120 Duration button, 119 Effect Info, 119 effect picon, 118 Flip Vertically, 119 From, To buttons, 118 Loop while paused button, 119 overview, 118 Reversed button, 119 setting fade in, 119 setting fade out, 119 Surface Wipe Softness, 119 Effects *A*/*V* edit, 112 *A*/*X edit*, 113 border for wipes, 120 borders, matching colors on screen, 122 creating dissolves, 109, 201 designating tracks for, 118 duration, 119 fixed duration, 277 flipping vertically, 119 loop while paused, 119 notes about, 119

# 322 ))))

replacing with dissolve, 114 reversing, 119 setting border color, 121, 122 setting fade in, 119 setting fade out, 119 setting properties, 118 setting softness for wipe, 119 using video as a border for wipes, 119 Eject Button, 53 Equalizer (EQ) Panel Frequency, 169 Gain, 169 High/Mid/Low buttons, 169 overview, 165 Q, 169 Event, flattening, 111 Events, 83 aligning with snap function, 115 changing duration, 14 deleting, 109 deleting selected, 110 inverting selection on timeline, 111 inverting selection on track, 111 recording, 54 selecting all on timeline, 114 selecting from here on a track of timeline, 114 selecting from here on timeline, 114 selecting none on timeline, 115 selecting track of timeline, 115 Expand All, 110 Expand Tree, 110 Extract Button, 71

## F

Fade In (Effects), 119 Fade Out (Effects), 119 Fake Dissolves, 85 Fit All, 110 Fit Selected, 110 Fixed Duration Effects, 277 Flatten Event, 111 Flatten Selected, 111 Flatten Timeline, 111 Flattening *multiple events*, 136 *single events*, 135 *timelines*, 136 Flip (Effect) Vertically Button, 119 Follow Rec(order) Button, 95 Frame Accuracy, Margin, 99 Frame Accuracy, Retries, 99 Framestore, Creating, 115 Freezing Clips, 77 Frequency, Audio, 169

## G

Gain, Audio, 169 Getting Your Timeline To Tape, 210 Global Settings, 196 Gray Monitor, 97 Green Slider *Effect Border Color panel*, 122 *Matte Color panel*, 122

## Н

Halve Track Height, 111 Help Window, Opening, 178 Higher Priority, 84, 111 Hold Keyframes, 159 Hot Keys See Keyboard Commands HSV/RGB Button, 122 Hue Slider Color Correction panel, 79 Effect Border Color Panel, 122 Matte Color Panel, 122 hue, saturation, value, 122 Hybrid Timeline, 243

### 

In Bin Button, 145 In Timecode, 133 In Timeline Button, 145 Incomplete Source, 97 Input (Color Correction Panel), Selecting, 78 Input Button, Time Machine

Recorder Panel, 64 Insert Video, Time Machine Recorder Panel, 64 Interface bins bottom, 36 changing the number of, 36 opening new, 36 resizing, 36 *top*, 36 customizing, 34 introduction to, 32 saving layout, 41, 182 timeline parts of, 82 resizing, 41 toolbar, 32 Introduction to Manual, 4 Invert Selection, 111 Invert Track, 111

## Κ

Keyboard Commands, 303 Keyframes adding, 107 adding cross-fade, 109 adding dips, 106, 107 adding fade ins, 106 adding fade outs, 107 cubic, 159 decibel level, 157 editing, 158 hold, 159 linear, 158

### L

Layout, Saving, 182 Left Monitor Controls -,+ buttons, 68 Cue In, Cue Out buttons, 68 duration timecode, 68 in point, out point timecode, 67 Mark In, Mark Out buttons, 67 overview, 65 shuttle slider, 66 source type button, 65

timecode, 66 transport controls, 69 Level (Audio) Controls, 163, 165 Levels Tracks doubling height, 110 halving height, 111 resetting height, 114 Levels, Animating Audio, 108 Lift Button, 71 Limit Chroma Button, 80 Limit High Luma Button, 80 Limit Low Luma Button, 80 Linear Editing adding clips to timeline, 200 assigning record decks, 186 assigning source decks, 184 logging clips, 192 making A/V edit, 112, 208 making A/X edit, 113, 207 naming tapes, 186 previewing timeline, 202 recording timeline, 210 setting recorder in point, 198 setting up decks and tapes, 182 striping tapes, 189 three-point editing, 195 tutorial, 182 using autosave, 196 using AutoSplice, 194 using overwrite, 195 using the Splice button, 194 Linear Keyframes, 158 Linear/Non-Linear Timeline, 243 Live Input Events, on Timeline, 26 Load Files To Source, 97 Loaded Files, List of, 47 Loading Files, Options, 97 Lock Trans Button, 95 Logging Clips, 192 accounting for user reaction time, 99 automatically sending to Batch Digitize List, 61 clearing clip settings, 62 from a digitized clip, 236 marking in and out points, 67 saving automatically, 63 Loop Clip

button, 127, 263

*in Trim Edit mode*, 130 *timecode*, 128, 130 Loop Count, Changing, 76 Loop Edit *button*, 129, 266 *timecode*, 130 Loop while paused (Effects) Button, 119 Loop, Playing Timeline In A, 92 Looping Clips, 241 Luma Slider, 79 Luma Values, Limiting, 80

### Μ

Main Controls eject button, 53 overview, 43 Recorder button, 44 shuttle slider, 52 Source, 45 timecode window, 52 Timeline button, 44 transport controls, 53 Main Source, Selecting Recorder, 44 Source, 45 Timeline, 44 Main Toolbar, 32 Make A/V Edit, 112, 208 Make A/X Edit, 113, 207 Make All (Timeline) Picons, 92 Manage Tapes Button, 144 Manual Conventions, 5 Mark Button, 98 Mark In, Mark Out Buttons, 60 Marking Clips, 192 Master Record Safes, 52 Matte Color Panel color picon, 122 Default button, 122 hue, saturation, value sliders, 122 mini color picons, 122 overview, 121 Pick button, 122 red, green, blue sliders, 122 Revert button, 122 RGB/HSV button, 122 Matte Color, Adjusting, 108 Mattes matching colors on screen,

GlobeCaster

## ,

122

setting color, 121, 122 Max(imum) Safe Preroll, 99 Merging Clips, 72 Message Area, 54 Mini Color Picons, 122 minimum effect length, saving as, 68 Mixing Audio, 161 Monitor Controls, 43 Monitor Slider, 161 Monitors 2, 3, 4 Buttons, 90 how many to use, 257 number of, 34 single monitor (View) mode, 90 Mouse Conventions, 5 Move Button, 94 Moving Clips, Options, 94 Moving Edits, Options, 95 Multiple events, flattening, 136 Mute Button, 161, 165

#### Ν

Naming A Timeline, 91 Naming Tapes, 47, 56, 186 New (Timeline) Button, 90 New Clip Button, 62 New Clip, Time Machine Recorder Panel, 64 Non-Linear Editing batch digitize window overview, 223 renaming clips, 223 setting compression level, 224 tape list, 225 batch digitizing, 226 changing playback speed, 238 clip versus source timecode, 233 digitizing AVI and WAV files, 237 digitizing clips, 212 dragging clips to batch list, 221 logging clips from a digitized clip, 236 looping clips, 241

# 324 )))

saving batch list, 221 sending clips to batch list, 214 setting batch list picon, 221 turning off audio, 225 tutorial, 212 using autobatch, 218 Notes, about Tapes, 58

## 0

OK Button, 54 Only Disk Button, 72 Options Button, 170 **Options Buttons** Btm (Bottom) Bins, 170 Configure, 170 Options, 170 overview, 170 Scope, 170 Top Bins, 170 Out Timecode, 133 **Output Monitor Controls** See Right Monitor Controls Overwrite Button, 61, 195 Overwriting Clips on the Timeline, 61

## Ρ

Pan (Audio) Controls, 163, 165 Panel Button, 75 Panels Clip Audio Properties, 164 Clip Main Properties, 70, 75 Color Correction, 77 Edit Key, 158 Editor Options, 93 Effect Border, 121 Effect Properties, 118 Effect Properties as Chroma *Kever*, 123 Equalizer (EQ), 165Matte Color, 121 Tape Audio Properties, 161 Tape Properties, 56 Time Machine Recorder Panel, 64 Timeline Properties, 92 Parts Of The Timeline, 82 Pause points, adding, 107

Perform Button, 54 Pick Button, 122 Picons Batch List, 144 color, 79 color (Effect Border Color *panel*), 122 color (Matte Color panel), 122 current clip, 71 effect, 118 making all timeline, 92 setting (clips), 73 timeline, 89 timeline pop-up menu, 90 timeline, setting, 91 Play Speed, Changing, 76, 238 Playing Timeline In A Loop, 92 Pop-Up Menus Animate Level, 160 Audio Event Menu, 103 Audio Level Track Menu, 104 current clip picon, 72 Keyframe Menu, 101 Rename/Delete, 150 snap frames, 117 Source button, 45 Tape Name, 47 timeline event, 99 timeline picon, 90 Track Menu, 106 Video Event Menu, 105 Position Bar overview, 83 setting to follow recorder, 95 splitting clips at, 115 Postroll, 99 Preroll, Maximum Safe, 99 Preview Button, 54 Preview Mode, 97 Previewing The Timeline options, 97 tutorial, 202 Priority, Of Clips, 84, 111 Priority, Using To Create Cuts, 85

## Q

Q (Equalizer), 169 Quick Keys See Keyboard Commands

## R

Rate, Strobe, 76 Reaction Frames, 99 Record Button, Time Machine Recorder Panel. 64 Record Buttons, Clip Main Properties Panel, 76 Record Decks assigning, 186 setting the in point, 198 Record Safes, 52 Record Tapes, Designating, 57 Record To Hard Drive, 74, 114 Recordable Button, 57 Recorder Button, 44 Recording Timelines, 54, 55, 210 Recording Timelines, Validation Bar, 82 Red Slider Effect Border Color panel, 122 Matte Color panel, 122 Redo button, 72 Timeline pop-up menu, 114 Reel Name, Clip Main Properties Panel, 75 Remove All Gaps, 114 Remove Gap, 114 Remove Selected, Batch Digitize Window, 143 Remove Unused Tapes Button, 98 Rename/Delete Pop-Up Menu, 150 Renaming clips, 73 clips in Batch Digitize window, 150 timelines, 91 Replace With Dissolve, 114 Replacing Clips on the Timeline, 62 Reset Button (Color Correction Panel), 78 Reset Timeline For Assembly Button, 98 Reset Track Height, 114 Reversed (Effects) Button, 119 **Revert Button** Color Correction Panel, 78

GlobeCaster

Effect Border Color Panel, 122 Matte Color Panel, 122 Slide editing mode, 132 Slip Source editing mode, 131 Transition Edit mode, 133 Trim Clip editing mode, 127 Trim Edit mode, 129 Review Button, 54 **RGB/HSV Button**, 122 Right Monitor Controls, 59 in point and out point timecode, 60 Mark In, Mark Out buttons, 60 timecode, 59 Timeline/Recorder/TM Recorder/Off button, 59 transport controls, 63 Ripple Button, 90 Roll Button, 94 Run Button, 76

### S

S(ou)rc(e) In/S(ou)rc(e) Out Timecode, 131 Saturation Slider Color Correction Panel, 79 Effect Border Color Panel, 122 Matte Color Panel, 122 Save (Batch) List Button, 144 Save (Clip) Button, 71 Save (Timeline) Button, 89 Save Layout, 41 Save Now (Batch Digitize) Button, 145 Save Text EDL (Edit Decision List), 92 Saving batch list, 144 clips, 71 clips, automatically, 63, 196 color correction settings, 79 EDL's (edit decision lists), 92 interface layout, 41, 182 timelines, 89, 205 Scope Button, 170 Scroll Bar, On Timeline, 84 Scrolling timeline, using scroom bar,

83,84 timeline, vertical scroll bar, 84 Scroom Bar, 83, 84 Scrubbing Through linear tapes, 95 timeline, 83 Select All, 114 Select All, Batch Digitize window, 143 Select From Here, 114 Select From Here On This Track, 114 Select None, 115 Select Track, 115 Selected, flattening, 111 Selecting a Source, 65 Selecting Clips For Batch Digitizing, 214 Selecting Clips On Timeline, 84 Send Left (Audio) Controls, 163, 165 Send Right (Audio) Controls, 163, 165 Sending Clips To Batch Digitize List, 141 Sequential Button, 98 Set (Timeline) Picon, 91 Set as Tape Default Button, 77 Setting all picons on timeline, 92 clip properties, 198 picons, 73 strobe rate, 76 the recorder's in point, 198 timeline picon, 91 Setting Up Decks And Tapes, 182 Setup button, 77 slider, 79 Shuttle Slider, 52 Single Click Button, 97 Single events, flattening, 135 Slide Button, 89 Slide Edit Button, 95 Slide Editing Mode Out/In timecode, 132 overview, 132 Revert button, 132 Slide Mode, 270 Sliders

decibel (edit key panel), 159 monitor, 161 red, green blue, 122 Slip Source Editing Mode overview, 131 Revert button, 131 S(ou)rc(e) In/S(ou)rc(e) Out timecode, 131 tutorial, 267 Slip Src (Source) Button, 89 Snap, 115 Snap Frames Pop-Up Menu, 117 Softness, Surface Wipe, 119 Source changing duration, 68 default duration, 68 selecting, 65 Source Button, 45 Source Button Pop-Up Menu, 45 Source Button, Time Machine Recorder Panel, 64 Source Decks, Assigning, 45, 184 Source Monitor Controls See Left Monitor Controls Source Status, 53 Source Type Button, 65 Source, Selecting for Right (Output) Monitor, 59 Sources cueing, 68 list of active, 47 Space Bar, 53 Speed, Changing, 238 Splice Button, 60, 194 Splicing Clips Automatically on a Timeline, 61 Splicing Clips onto a Timeline, 60 Splicing Together Timelines, 87 Split At Pos(ition)Bar, 115 Split Button, 71 Splitting Clips, 52, 71, 115 Start (Batch Digitize) Button, 144 Starting Timecode For Timelines, Marking, 98 Status Messages general, 54 source, 53 Stop (Batch Digitize) Button, 144

# 326 ))))

Stop Button, Time Machine Recorder Panel, 64 Striping A Tape, 189 Stripping Audio, 164 Stripping Audio or Video, 76, 163 Strobe Rate, 76 Strobing Clips, 77 Surface Wipe Softness, 119 Switcher Button, 178 Sync Roll Editing building a timeline, 288 digitizing the timeline, 294 importing timeline into Editor, 292 setting picons for clips, 294 tutorial, 279

## Т

T (Transition) Duration Timecode, 134 Tape Audio Properties Panel level controls, 163 opening, 57 overview, 161 pan controls, 163 send left controls, 163 send right controls, 163 trim controls, 163 Use Source buttons, 163 Tape List, Batch Digitize Window, 143 Tape Name assigning, 56 button, 47 in Batch Digitize window, 148 pop-up menu, 47 removing, 98 Tape Properties Panel buttons delete, 58 Recordable, 57 fields Name, 58 tape name, 56 Value, 58 naming tapes, 47 overview, 56 Tape Scrub Button, 95 Tapes

naming, 47, 186 scrubbing, 95 setting audio properties, 161 setting properties, 56 striping, 189 stripping audio, 163 Three-Point Editing, 61, 195 Time Machine batch digitize window batch digitizing, 226 overview, 142, 223 renaming clips, 223 tape list, 225 changing loop count, 76 changing play speed, 76, 238 clip versus source timecode, 233 comments window, 149 compression levels, 149 compression ratio, 76 deleting clips from batch list, 150 deleting digitized clips, 140 Digitize button, 72 digitizing AVI and WAV files, 141, 237 digitizing clips, 110, 140, 212 dragging clips to batch list, 221 *hybrid (linear/non-linear)* timeline, 243 logging clips from a digitized *clip*, 236 looping clips, 241 naming projects, 149 Only Disk button, 72 opening Batch Digitize window, 72 overview, 138, 212 renaming clips, 150 saving batch in bin, 145 saving batch list, 221 saving batch on timeline, 145 saving clip from batch list, 147 selecting clips in batch list, 148 selecting components for digitizing, 148 sending clips to batch list, 108, 141, 214 setting batch list picon, 221

size of clips, 149 space available on hard drives, 143 turning off audio, 225 Use Freeze button, 72 user name, 149 using autobatch, 218 where clips are saved, 139 Time Machine clips, exporting, 153 Time Machine Recorder Panel, 64 Timecode clip versus source, 233 main source, 52 source versus timeline, 250 timeline, 82 timeline starts, 98 Timecode Window, Time Machine Recorder Panel, 64 Timeline adding a graphic overlay, 24 adding audio cross-fade, 109 adding audio dips, 106, 107 adding audio fade ins, 106 adding audio fade outs, 107 adding audio keyframes, 107 adding clips, 200 adding effects, 21 adding effects and DSK's, 204 animating audio levels, 108, 155, 165 appending, 87, 205 assembling, options, 98 automatically splicing clips, 61 changing the duration of events, 14 clearing, 90 clip priority, 84 collapsing tree, 109 creating cuts, 16 creating dissolves, 18, 109 creating framestores, 115 deleting events, 109 deleting selected events, 110 designating tracks for effects, 118 digitizing clips, 110, 212 doubling Levels track height, 110

GlobeCaster

duration timecode, 84 Editor Options panel, 93 events, 83 expanding all tracks, 110 expanding tree, 110 extracting clips, 71 fit all, 110 fit selected, 110 Flatten Event, 111 Flatten Selected, 111 Flatten Timeline, 111 halving Levels track height, 111 hybrid (linear/non-linear), 243 inverting selection, 111 inverting selection on track, 111lifting clips, 71 live input events, 26 making notes about, 92 marking starting timecode, 98 moving clips, options, 94 moving edits, options, 95 overview, 81 overwriting clips, 61 parts of, 82 performing (recording), 54 playing in a loop, 92 position bar, 83 previewing, 54, 202 properties panel, 92 recording, 55, 210 removing all gaps, 114 removing gap, 114 renaming, 91 replacing clips, 62 replacing effect with dissolve, 114 resetting Levels track height, 114 resetting validation bar, 98 resizing, 41 reviewing, 54 ripple editing, 90 Save button, 89 saving, 89, 205 scroom bar, 83, 84 scrubbing through (linear tapes), 95 selecting all, 114

selecting clips on, 84 selecting from here, 114 selecting from here on a track, 114 selecting none, 115 selecting track, 115 selecting track for spliced clips, 52 sending clips to batch list, 108, 215 setting higher priority, 84, 111 setting recorder in point, 198 setting the position of clips, 60 setting timeline picon, 91 snap function, 115 splicing clips, 60 splitting clips, 52, 71, 115 stripping audio, 164 three-point editing, 61 timecode, 82 tracks, 83 tree, 83 Ungroup Audio and Video Events, 115 using fixed duration effects, 277 validation bar, 82 vertical scroll bar, 84 zooming, 115, 116 Timeline Button, 44, 88 **Timeline Controls** 2, 3, 4 monitor buttons, 90 Add Clip button, 90 New button, 90 overview, 88 Ripple button, 90 Save button, 89 Slide button, 89 Slip Src (Source) button, 89 Timeline button, 88 timeline picon, 89 Trans(ition) Edit button, 90 Trim Clip button, 89 Trim Edit button, 89 View button, 90 Timeline Event Pop-Up Menu overview, 99 Timeline Menu Items, 106 Timeline Picon, 89 Timeline Picon Pop-Up Menu

make all picons, 92 overview, 90 play in loop, 92 Properties, 91 Rename, 91 save text edl (edit decision *list*), 92 setting the picon, 91 Timeline Pop-Up Menu Add Dip, 106 Add Fade In, 106 Add Fade Out, 107 Add Kevframe, 107 Add to Batch Digitize, 108 Adjust Color, 108 Adjust color, 108 Animate Level, 108 Collapse Tree, 109 Create Cross-Fade, 109 Create Dissolve, 109 Cubic, 109 Delete Event, 109 Delete Key, 109 Delete Selected Event, 110 Delete Selected Events, 110 Digitize to Time Machine, 110 Double Track Height, 110 Double Track Heights, 110 *Edit Key*, 110 Effect Properties, 110 Expand All, 110 Expand Tree, 110 Fit All, 110 Fit Selected, 110 Flatten Event, 111 Flatten Selected, 111 Flatten Timeline, 111 Halve Track Height, 111 Higher Priority, 111 *Hold*, 111 Invert Selection, 111 Invert Track, 111 Linear, 112 Make A/V Edit, 112 Make A/X Edit, 113 Properties, 113 Record to Hard Drive, 114 Record to Harddrive, 114 *Redo*, 114 Remove All Gaps, 114 Remove Gap, 114

## 328 ))))

Replace With Dissolve, 114 Replace with Dissolve, 114 Reset Track Height, 114 Select All, 114 Select From Here, 114 Select From Here on This Track, 114 Select None, 115 Select Track, 115 Show Filenames Upon Selection, 115 Snap, 115 Split at Pos(ition)Bar, 115 Split at PosBar, 115 Turn into Framestore, 115 Undo, 115 Ungroup Audio and Video Events, 115 Zoom 1/2, 115 Zoom All, 116 Zoom at Position Bar, 116 Zoom x2, 116 **Timeline Properties Panel** Delete button, 92 Name, 92 overview, 92 Value, 92 Timeline Starts Timecode, 98 timeline, dropping videos onto, 142 To Do List (Batch Digitize), 146 To Do List, Adding Clips To, 221 Toolbar, 32 \_*button*, 178 2, 3, 4 monitor buttons, 90 Add Clip button, 90 Animator/Compositor button, 178 audio controls, 161 Batch button, 72 Btm (Bottom) Bins, 170 Character Generator button, 178 clip controls, 70 Clip Props button, 70 Configure button, 170 current clip picon, 71 Digitize button, 72 Effect Generator button, 178 Extract button, 71 Lift button, 71

main controls, 43 Merge button, 72 New (timeline) button, 90 Only Disk button, 72 Options button, 170 options buttons, 170 Redo button, 72 Ripple button, 90 Save (clips) button, 71 Scope button, 170 Slide button, 89 Slip Src (Source) button, 89 Split button, 71 Timeline button, 88 timeline controls, 88 timeline picon, 89 Top Bins button, 170 Trans(ition) Edit button, 90 Trim Clip button, 89 Trim Edit button, 89 Undo button, 72 Use Freeze button, 72 View button, 90 Top Bins Button, 36, 170 Total %, 144 Track # Button, 52 Tracks animating levels, 108 collapsing, 109 designating for effects, 118 doubling height, 110 expanding all, 110 expanding tree, 110 halving height, 111 inverting selection, 111 on timeline, 83 priority of, 84 resetting height, 114 selecting, 52, 115 selecting events from here, 114 setting higher priority, 84, 111 Trans(ition) Edit Button, 90 Transition Edit Mode -/+ buttons, 134 In timecode, 133 Out timecode, 133 overview, 133, 272 Revert button, 133 T (Transition) Duration timecode, 134

Trn (Transition) In timecode, 133 Trn (Transition) Out timecode, 133 Transitions border, 120 designating tracks, 118 editing, 133, 272 flipping vertically, 119 using video as a border, 119 Transport Controls left monitor, 69 main controls, 53 overview, 43 right (output) monitor, 63 Tree collapsing, 109 expanding, 110 expanding all, 110 timeline tracks, 83 Trim (Audio) Controls, 163, 165 Trim Clip Button, 89 Trim Clip Button (Editor Options Panel), 95 Trim Clip Editing Mode duration timecode, 128 In/Out Timecode, 127 Loop Clip, 127 Loop Clip timecode, 128 overview, 127 Revert button, 127 tutorial. 261 Trim Edit Button, 89 Trim Edit Editing Mode duration timecode, 130 Loop Clip, 130 Loop Clip timecode, 130 Loop Edit button, 129 Loop Edit timecode, 130 Out/In Timecode, 129 overview, 129 Revert button, 129 tutorial, 264 Trimming Clips with mouse, 95 Trn (Transition) In Timecode, 133 Trn (Transition) Out Timecode, 133 Turn Into Framestore, 115 Tutorials linear editing, 182

GlobeCaster

non-linear editing, 212 sync roll editing, 279 using advanced editing modes, 256

#### U

Undo Button, 72 Unlocking Audio or Video Tracks, 76 Use Freeze Button, 72 Use Source Buttons, 163, 164 Use Tape Default Button, 77 Using Advanced Editing Modes *overview*, 124 *tutorial*, 256 Using AutoBatch, 218 Using Automated Features, 194 Using Monitor and Transport Controls, 43 Using Options And Applications Buttons, 170

## V

Validation Bar overview, 82 resetting, 98 Value Slider Effect Border Color Panel, 122 Matte Color Panel, 122 VBV Button, 97 Vector Scope Cb waveform monitor, 175 Cr waveform monitor, 176 overview, 170 Parade mode, 177 y waveform monitor, 174 Vertical Scroll Bar (On Timeline), 84 Video Button, 52 video files, dropping onto the timeline, 142 Video Tracks stripping, 76 unlocking, 76 View Button, 35, 90 Volume, in Batch Digitize Window, 148 VTR Transport/Sync Roll/Live Digitize Panel, 279 VU Meter, 161 VVV Button, 97

#### W

WAV Files, Digitizing, 141, 237 Waveform Monitor See Vector Scope White Hue, 79 White Mag, 79 Wipes border, 120 flipping vertically, 119 setting softness, 119 using video as a border, 119 Working With Clips, 70 Working With Timelines, 81

## Х

X Button, 178

## Ζ

Zoom 1/2, 115 Zoom All, 116 Zoom At Position Bar, 116 Zooming *timeline*, 115, 116 *fit all*, 110 *fit selected*, 110 *using scroom bar*, 83, 84



GlobeCaster ( 331

## **GlobeCaster System License Agreement**

IMPORTANT - READ THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT ("AGREEMENT") CAREFULLY BEFORE USING OR OTHERWISE OPERATING THE GLOBECASTER SYSTEM. BY USING THE GLOBECASTER SYSTEM, YOU INDICATE YOUR ACCEPTANCE AND AGREEMENT OF THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT. GLOBALSTREAMS, INC.'S ("GLOBALSTREAMS") ACCEPTANCE OF YOUR GLOBECASTER SYSTEM ORDER IS EXPRESSLY CONDITIONED UPON YOUR ASSENT TO ALL THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT TO THE EXCLUSION OF ALL OTHER TERMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION ANY SUPERSEDING OR ADDITIONAL TERMS PROPOSED BY YOU (OTHER THAN CONFIRMING AGREED-UPON PRICE, QUANTITY AND SHIPPING INFORMATION): IF THESE TERMS ARE CONSIDERED AN OFFER BY GLOBALSTREAM, ACCEPTANCE IS EXPRESSLY LIMITED TO THESE TERMS. IF YOU ARE NOT WILLING TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT, YOU SHOULD PROMPTLY RETURN THE GLOBECASTER SYSTEM, INCLUDING ANY UNOPENED SOFTWARE PACKAGE(S) AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTATION, FOR A FULL REFUND OF APPLICABLE FEES PAID. THIS IS A LEGAL AGREEMENT BETWEEN YOU (YOUR COMPANY IF APPLICABLE) AND GLOBALSTREAMS. THIS AGREEMENT REPRESENTS THE ENTIRE AGREEMENT CONCERNING THE GLOBECASTER SYSTEM (AS DEFINED BELOW) BETWEEN YOU AND GLOBALSTREAMS AND SUPERSEDES ANY PRIOR PROPOSAL, REPRESENTATION, OR UNDERSTANDING BETWEEN THE PARTIES. IN THE EVENT OF ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THIS AGREEMENT AND ANY OTHER DOCUMENT RECEIVED FROM YOU, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION ANY PURCHASE ORDER DOCUMENTATION, THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT SHALL PREVAIL.

#### 1. GRANT OF LICENSE.

1.1 Subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement, GlobalStreams hereby grants to you, and you accept, a limited, personal, nonexplosive, non sub licensable, nontransferable (except in accordance with Section 11.1) license to use each copy of the software object code provided to you, including any updates or upgrades provided by GlobalStreams (the "Software"), with the tangible equipment provided by GlobalStreams ("Hardware") and the accompanying hardcopy documentation (the "Documentation") (the Software, Hardware and Documentation collectively constituting the "GlobeCaster System") for the sole purpose of offering to your customers broadcast production services as authorized in this Agreement. You agree that you will not assign, sublicense, transfer, pledge, lease, rent, or share your rights under this Agreement. You agree that you may not reverse assemble, reverse compile, or otherwise translate the Software or create derivative works of the Software or Documentation. You will use reasonable efforts to protect GlobalStreams' rights under this Section 1 and will notify GlobalStreams of any infringement about which you become aware.

1.2 You may make one (1) archival copy of the Software and Documentation, provided that you affix to such copy all copyright, confidentiality, and proprietary notices that appear on the original. You may make one copy of the Documentation for backup purposes. Except as authorized under this paragraph, no copies of the Software or Documentation or any portions thereof may be made by you or any person under your authority or control.



1.3 The license in Section 1.1 above will terminate immediately without notice from GlobalStreams if you fail to comply with any provision of this Section 1. Upon termination, you will destroy all copies of Software and Documentation or, alternatively, return all such Software or Documentation to GlobalStreams.

1.4 You will not alter, erase, deface or overprint any notices, trademarks, emblems, legends or other proprietary labels of any nature on or in the GlobeCaster System.

**2. LICENSOR'S RIGHTS.** You acknowledge and agree that the Software and the Documentation are proprietary products of GlobalStreams protected under U.S. copyright law. Title to the Software and Documentation will at all times remain with GlobalStreams and, where applicable, its suppliers. GlobalStreams retains ownership of any and all copyrights, patent rights, trademark rights, trade secret rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other intellectual property rights ("Intellectual Property") related to or resulting from installation, training, support and/or maintenance of the GlobeCaster System. This Agreement does not create any implied licenses. All rights not expressly granted are reserved by GlobalStreams. You acknowledge that the GlobeCaster System contains trade secrets of GlobalStreams and, accordingly, you will not use (except as authorized herein) or disclose the Software or Documentation without GlobalStreams' prior written approval, and you will use reasonable measures to protect it.

**3. LICENSE FEES, PAYMENT, DELIVERY.** The fees paid by you are paid in consideration of the Hardware and licenses granted under this Agreement. Prices and fees are exclusive of all sales, use, and like taxes and duties. All payments must be in United States dollars. Any tax or duties GlobalStreams may be required to collect or pay upon sale, use, licensing or delivery of the GlobeCaster System shall be paid by you to GlobalStreams upon invoice. The GlobeCaster System is shipped FOB GlobalStreams' site, and all transportation charges related to the shipment of the GlobeCaster System shall be paid by you to GlobalStreams shall be paid by you to GlobalStreams' site, and all transportation charges related to the shipment of the GlobeCaster System shall be paid by you to GlobalStreams upon invoice.

**4. SUPPORT AND MAINTENANCE.** Support and maintenance services are not provided under this Agreement. You must separately contract with GlobalStreams and pay any applicable fees for these services.

**5. TERM.** This Agreement is effective upon your initial operation of the GlobeCaster System and shall continue until terminated. You may terminate this Agreement at any time by returning the Software and Documentation and extracts therefrom to GlobalStreams. Upon such termination by GlobalStreams, you agree to return to GlobalStreams all copies and portions thereof of the Software and Documentation. GlobalStreams may terminate this Agreement upon the breach by you of any term hereof. Termination of this Agreement by GlobalStreams shall not release you from any liability which at the time of termination has already accrued to GlobalStreams or which thereafter may accrue in respect to any act or omission prior to termination or from any obligation specified to survive termination.

**6. CONFIDENTIALITY.** You acknowledge that, in connection with this Agreement and your relationship with GlobalStreams, you may obtain information relating to the GlobeCaster System and to GlobalStreams that is of a confidential and proprietary nature ("Confidential Information"). Such Confidential Information may include, but is not limited to, trade secrets, know how, inventions, techniques, processes, programs, schematics, software source documents, data, customer lists, financial information, and sales and marketing plans, or information that you know or have reason to know is confidential, proprietary or trade secret information of GlobalStreams. You shall at all times,

GlobeCaster

both during the term of this Agreement and for a period of at least five (5) years after its termination, keep in trust and confidence all such Confidential Information, and shall not use such Confidential Information other than as expressly authorized by GlobalStreams under this Agreement, nor shall you disclose any such Confidential Information to third parties without GlobalStreams' written consent. You further agree to immediately return to GlobalStreams all Confidential Information (including copies thereof) in your possession, custody, or control upon termination of this Agreement at any time and for any reason. The obligations of confidentiality shall not apply to information that (a) is in the public domain, except as a result of your breach of this Agreement; (b) prior to disclosure hereunder was already rightfully in your possession, without an obligation of confidentiality; or (c) subsequent to disclosure hereunder is obtained by you on a nonconfidential basis from a third party who has the right to disclose such information to you.

7. INDEMNIFICATION. You will, at your sole expense and GlobalStreams' request, defend, indemnify and hold GlobalStreams and GlobalStreams' affiliates or any director, officers or employee of either (collectively the "GlobalStreams Parties") harmless from all damages, claims, actions, proceedings and/or settlements (including reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses) arising out of or in connection with: (i) your activities relating to the GlobeCaster System; (ii) any web site operated, controlled or in any way associated with you, (iii) any content used in any manner in connection with your GlobeCaster System (other than unmodified content supplied by GlobalStreams) (such content hereinafter referred to as your "Media") that infringes or violates any Intellectual Property, proprietary or contractual right of a third party; (iv) any use of the GlobeCaster System that causes GlobalStreams to violate any agreement GlobalStreams may have with a third party supplier; (v) any defamatory or libelous material or material that discloses private or personal matters concerning any person, without such person's consent; (vi) any violations of law or regulations; (vii) your Media or any messages, data, images or programs that are illegal, or are, by law, obscene, profane or pornographic or (viii) any messages, data, images or programs that would violate, interfere with, disrupt or otherwise materially harm the rights of others, including unauthorized copyrighted text, images or programs, trade secrets or other confidential proprietary information, or trademarks or service marks used in an infringing fashion, including claims by any guilds or other collective bargaining units or royalty tribunals (all of the foregoing claims or actions being referred to hereinafter as "Claims"). GlobalStreams agrees to: (a) provide Client reasonably prompt notice in writing of any such Claims and (b) provide you reasonable information and assistance, at your expense, to help defend the Claims. You agree to consult with GlobalStreams and obtain GlobalStreams' written approval on the choice of any counsel under this section.

**8. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY.** GLOBALSTREAMS' CUMULATIVE LIABILITY TO YOU OR ANY OTHER PARTY FOR ANY LOSS OR DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ANY CLAIMS, DEMANDS, OR ACTIONS ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS AGREEMENT UNDER ANY THEORY (INCLUDING CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY OR OTHER LEGAL OR EQUITABLE THEORY) SHALL NOT EXCEED THE AGGREGATE OF THE AMOUNTS PAID BY YOU TO GLOBALSTREAMS FOR THE TWELVE MONTH PERIOD PRIOR TO THE DATE THE CAUSE OF ACTION AROSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL GLOBALSTREAMS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES OR LOST PROFITS,



EVEN IF GLOBALSTREAMS HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. THIS SECTION DOES NOT LIMIT LIABILITY FOR BODILY INJURY OR DEATH OF A PERSON. SOME STATES DO NOT ALLOW THE LIMITATION OR EXCLUSION OF LIABILITY FOR INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR OTHER DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATION OR EXCLUSION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

**9. HIGH RISK ACTIVITIES.** The Software is not fault-tolerant and is not designed, manufactured or intended for use or resale as on-line control equipment in hazardous environments regarding fail-safe performance, such as in the operation of nuclear facilities, aircraft navigation or communication systems, air traffic control, direct life support machines or weapons systems, in which the failure of the Software could lead directly to death, personal injury, or severe physical or environmental damage ("High Risk Activities"). GlobalStreams and its suppliers specifically disclaim any express or implied warranty of fitness for High Risk Activities. Any such use is expressly prohibited without prior written agreement of GlobalStreams under terms intended to allocate the risks of selling the GlobeCaster System for such uses. You will indemnify, defend and hold GlobalStreams harmless from all claims, losses, damages and expenses, including attorneys' fees and costs arising from any prohibited use or application of the GlobeCaster System.

**10. U.S. GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS.** If you are a unit or agency of the United States Government ("U.S. Government"), the following provisions apply: All Software and accompanying Documentation are deemed to be "commercial computer software" and "commercial computer software documentation," respectively, pursuant to DFAR Section 227.7202 and FAR Section 12.212, as applicable. Any use, modification, reproduction, release, performance, display or disclosure of the Software and accompanying Documentation by the U.S. Government will be governed solely by the terms of this Agreement and will be prohibited except to the extent expressly permitted by the terms herein. Manufacturer is GlobalStreams, Inc., 43 Maryland Plaza, St. Louis, MO 63108.

#### **11. MISCELLANEOUS.**

11.1 You have no right to assign or sublicense this Agreement or any Software licenses, in whole or in part, without GlobalStreams' prior written consent. Any attempt to assign or sublicense this Agreement without such consent will be null and void. GlobalStreams may assign this Agreement in whole or in part. In the event GlobalStreams is acquired, this Agreement will continue in accordance with its terms.

11.2 This Agreement will not establish any relationship of partnership, joint venture, employment, franchise, or agency between you and GlobalStreams. Neither you nor GlobalStreams will have the power to bind the other or incur obligations on the other's behalf.

11.3 This Agreement shall be construed and governed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, excluding its conflict of law rules, and venue and jurisdiction for any disputes lie exclusively in Alameda County, California. You consent to service of process and venue.



11.4 Should any term of this Agreement be declared void or unenforceable by any court of competent jurisdiction, such declaration shall have no effect on the remaining terms hereof.

11.5 If any action is brought by either party to this Agreement against the other party regarding the subject matter hereof, the prevailing party shall be entitled to recover, in addition to any other relief granted, reasonable attorney fees and expenses of litigation.

11.6 The failure of either party to enforce any rights granted hereunder or to take action against the other party in the event of any breach hereunder shall not be deemed a waiver by that party as to subsequent enforcement of rights or subsequent actions in the event of future breaches.

11.7 You will comply with the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act and all export laws and restrictions and regulations of the Department of Commerce, the United States Department of Treasury, or other U.S. or foreign agency and authority, and not export, or allow the export or re-export of any GlobeCaster System in violation of any such restrictions, laws or regulations. You will obtain and bear all expenses relating to any necessary licenses and exemptions with respect to the export from the U.S. of any GlobeCaster System to any location. GlobeCaster System License Agreement









<u> </u>	

Editor Manual GlobeCaster \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ \_ \_\_\_\_\_ \_



 • · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·



\_

